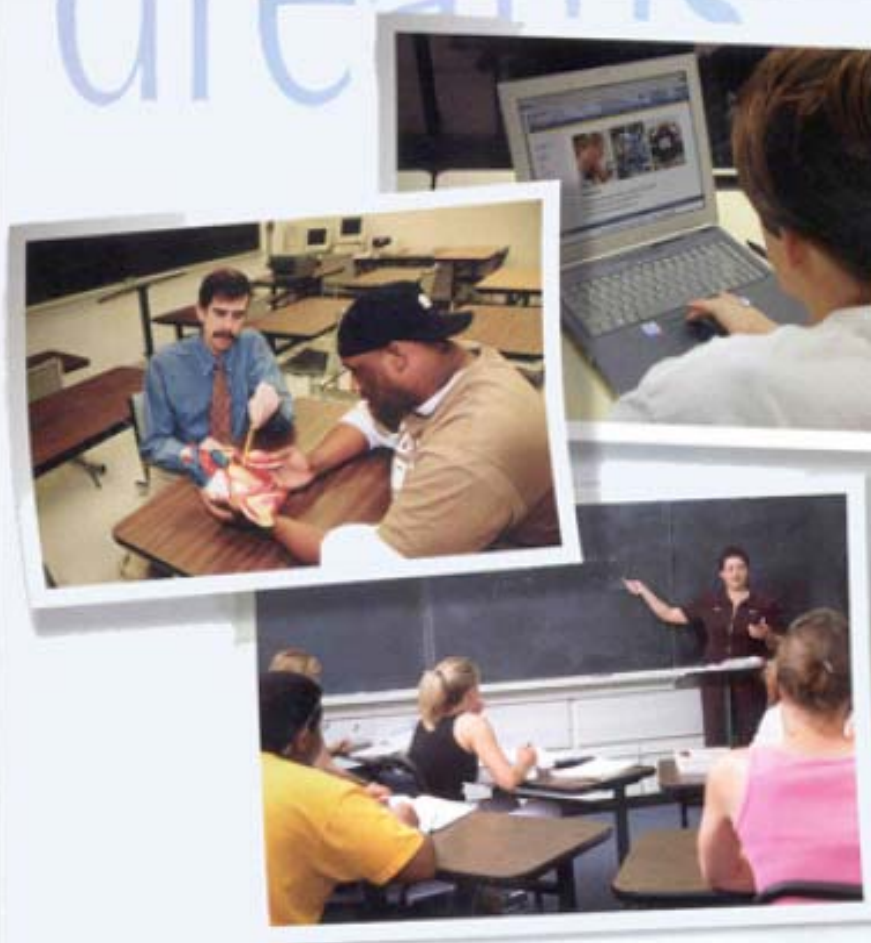


# Averett University

dreams



**Table of Contents**

**Introducing Averett..... 3**

**Admissions ..... 9**

**Academic Programs ..... 18**

**Degree Programs ..... 48**

**Student Life..... 224**

**Financial Information ..... 232**

**Directory of Personnel ..... 248**

**University Calendar ..... 267**

**Index ..... 268**

---

---

## INTRODUCING AVERETT

---

---

### **General Information**

The University welcomes visitors to the campus throughout the year. The administrative offices are open from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m., Monday through Friday. Appointments for all interviews should be made in advance, if possible. Telephone (434) 791-5600 or toll free 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388). Or contact us at [www.averett.edu](http://www.averett.edu).

Averett University does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, creed, age, gender, national origin or disability in the administration of any of its educational programs, activities, admissions or employment practices.

Averett reserves the right to change courses, requirements, and regulations in this catalog without advance notice. Failure to read this catalog does not excuse students from the requirements and regulations described herein.

Since Averett University does not print a paper catalog, this electronic document is the official academic catalog of the university.

Formal complaints may be directed to the Vice President for Administration and Finance.

### **The University Mission**

Averett University, founded in 1859, offers courses of study leading to bachelor's and master's degrees in Danville and at regional centers in Virginia. Through personal attention for all students, Averett prepares them for successful lives by encouraging each, in the liberal arts tradition, to ask and answer important questions, form and defend judgments, and evaluate diverse views thoughtfully. In accordance with our Christian heritage, we value academic and religious freedom, spiritual growth, academic excellence, diversity, and tolerance.

## **From the President**

This Averett University undergraduate catalog brings together many kinds of useful information. Most important are the academic rules and regulations – what students do in order to earn their degrees. In addition to descriptions of courses and requirements for each major, there is a full explanation of the goals of general education, the academic core of the undergraduate experience.

The catalog also includes Averett’s mission, a short introduction to the University, and information about admission, student life, finances and financial aid, a map, and an academic calendar.

Although the catalog states many rules, what makes our community is not rules but people. Central to our purpose are the people in the faculty who teach, advise, and inspire. They are listed in the catalog, and as you can see from the summaries of their degrees they have prepared through study at fine colleges and universities. They bring their special gifts to their work with students, which is why a degree from Averett is so worthwhile.

Use the catalog to understand why we do what we do, refer to it often, and if there’s anything you don’t understand, just ask!

Richard A. Pfau  
President

## **Accreditation and Memberships**

Averett University is accredited by the Commission on Colleges of the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools (1866 Southern Lane, Decatur, GA, 30033-4097, telephone 404-679-4501) to award associate, baccalaureate and master's degrees. The teacher preparation program is approved by the Department of Education, Commonwealth of Virginia. The Athletic Training Program is accredited by the Commission on Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE). The University is approved for payment for veterans.

Averett University's memberships include: the American Council on Education, Association of Virginia Colleges, Council of Independent Colleges, and the Virginia Humanities Conference.

## **History**

Averett was chartered in 1859 under the name of Union Female College. For almost 150 years it has operated continuously, though undergoing several name changes. In 1910 the College became affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia. The name Averett was given to the College by the Board of Trustees in 1917. It was also in 1917 that the College received, from the Virginia State Board of Education, its first accreditation as a junior college. The College was accredited by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1928 and by the Board of Regents of the University of the State of New York in 1932.

In the fall of 1969, Averett undertook a major reorientation of its program by adding a four-year baccalaureate degree program and making the College co-educational. Since that time, Averett has experienced unusual growth and is emerging as one of the outstanding private senior colleges in Virginia. Upon the graduation of its first baccalaureate class in spring, 1971, Averett received senior college approval from the State Council of Higher Education for Virginia and accreditation by the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools. In 1978 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Education degree. Accreditation at the master's level was received in 1981. In the fall of 1983 the College began offering courses leading to the Master of Business Administration degree. The program was approved by the State Council of Higher Education of Virginia in the spring of 1984 and received accreditation from the Commission on Colleges of the Southern Association of Colleges and Schools in 1986.

On July 1, 2001, Averett College officially became Averett University, entering another chapter in the institution's history. In adopting the name, Averett University, the Board of Trustees affirmed Averett's position as an innovative, small, private university that gives students the individual attention traditionally associated with small liberal arts colleges along with the advantages found at comprehensive universities. Today, even though the University is no longer affiliated with a religious denomination, Averett remains true to its heritage as an institution where Christian principles are valued and where teaching and learning come first. The University, in addition to its main campus in Danville, has grown to include learning centers throughout Virginia where working adults can experience the benefits of an Averett education.

## **Averett University and Danville, Virginia.**

Averett University is located in a residential neighborhood adjacent to Danville's famed Millionaires Row, a vast collection of Victorian homes recognized by historians for their architectural splendor. Ballou Park, a 107-acre park and shopping center, is located within easy walking distance from the University. Averett is also located within walking distance of a variety of churches, several restaurants and a movie theatre. Piedmont Mall, other shopping outlets and a selection of chain and family-owned restaurants are just a short drive across the Dan River. Averett is also conveniently located down the street from Danville Regional Medical Center and other medical service providers.

In addition to the tennis courts, playing fields, fitness center and basketball courts available at Averett, the city offers recreational facilities, including the 150-acre Dan Daniel Park, home of the Danville Braves, Atlanta's Rookie Class minor league baseball team. Dan Daniel Park features trails for hiking and biking. Averett is within walking distance of a YMCA, which offers swimming, racquetball and other fitness activities. Perfect for walking and biking, the city also maintains a popular paved river walk along the Dan River.

The University sponsors an annual Concert-Lecture Series that brings musical groups, lectures and plays to Danville. The Averett Singers, Averett Players and Averett's art students also provide a schedule of plays, concerts and exhibits during the academic year. The Danville Concert Association, Danville Arts and Humanities, the Little Theatre of Danville and other community groups regularly bring high-quality performances to the area. Danville's Carrington Pavilion, an outdoor amphitheater, also hosts concerts and special events.

The city offers three local museums. The Museum of Fine Arts and History, which is within walking distance of the University, houses art galleries, studio space and an auditorium used by local repertory groups. The Danville Science Center, a satellite of the Science Museum of Virginia, offers hands-on exhibits and, during the summer, its popular butterfly station. The American Armoured Foundation Tank Museum showcases tanks and other military equipment.

### **Quick Facts**

Danville enjoys four distinct seasons with an average annual temperature of 58.1 °F.

The city's population is approximately 48,400

Averett is just three miles from the Virginia-North Carolina border and is convenient to airports in both states.

### **Campus**

The main campus of Averett is situated on approximately 19 acres in a beautiful residential section of the city of Danville. Rolling piedmont hills, with the Blue Ridge Mountains in the distance, provide an appealing view from the buildings.

Four of the major living and instructional facilities are located in connected buildings. These buildings contain residence hall rooms, classrooms, laboratories, lounge areas, and administrative offices.

**Main Hall**, constructed in 1910, was the first building on the present site of the University. It has undergone many renovations and additions. Currently this five-story building contains administrative offices, reception rooms, the University bookstore, student laundry facilities, campus post office, the Computer Center, a computer lab, faculty offices, and residence hall space for men and women. Street level entrance and an elevator make this building accessible to persons with disabilities. **Davenport Hall** houses three floors of residence halls, a central lounge area, an art studio, and the Residence Life Office. **Danville Hall** contains residence halls on the top two floors. Classrooms, facilities for the student publications, and the Security Office are located on the second floor. Two of the classrooms have wireless computer capabilities. The first and second floors have outside entrances which are accessible to those with disabilities. **Bishop Hall** is the newest building in this four-facility complex. It includes classrooms, The Center for Academic Excellence, The Writing Center, meeting rooms and a residence hall.

**Averett Commons** is our student apartment complex providing 140 private student bedrooms. Each apartment contains a furnished central living area, a full-service kitchen, a washer/dryer, and two bathrooms. This complex is intended for upperclass students and contains accessible apartments on the first floor for those with disabilities.

The **Gymnasium** and **Pritchett Auditorium** are located immediately north of Bishop Hall. The **Gymnasium** is used for classes, intramurals and open recreation. **Pritchett Auditorium** is located above the gymnasium and has its entrance from Mt. View Avenue. It is the home of the Averett Players and is a site for cultural offerings of the Concert/Lecture series.

**Frith Hall**, completed in 1985, houses the science and psychology laboratories and most of the classrooms for the University. A large number of faculty have offices in this building. The David S. Blount Chapel, completed in 1996, is located on the second level. Street access is available on three levels and an elevator makes all floors accessible to persons with disabilities.

**Alumni Hall** was originally constructed as the house for the University president. Since 1984 it has housed the staff of Institutional Advancement, including alumni relations and public relations.

The **Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center** is the newest academic building on campus. It houses the Music Department, practice rooms, music library, and media center, as well as classrooms and a recital hall.

**Fugate Hall** is a residence facility with a capacity for housing 150 students. There are fifteen suites, each containing a central living area, storage closets, a large bath and five bedrooms. This building has central air conditioning and one floor is easily accessible for persons with disabilities.

The **Fine Arts Building** is located on West Main Street. It was formerly a private residence which has been converted for use by the Art Department. Nearby is the **Carriage House**, another building used by the Art Department for sculpture and ceramics instruction.

The **W. C. English Hall** is another private residence on West Main Street which has been converted to University use. It houses the offices of the Admissions staff of the University.

The **Financial Aid Office** is located in a former private residence on Robertson Avenue. It houses the offices of the Dean of Financial Assistance and the Financial Aid staff.

The **Student Center** opened in 2006. The 35,000-square-foot facility includes a dining hall, café, lounge, game area, outdoor deck, computer lab, and offices for student clubs/organizations. The building also houses the office of the Dean of Students, student activities, career center, and counseling center.

The **Mary B. Blount Library** supports the university curriculum and research and reading interests of students and faculty with scholarly and professional sources, space for individual and group study, access technologies, and instruction by library faculty. The library is located at 344 West Main Street, near the Main Hall, and next to Averett University Admissions Office. The library building is open seven days a week during the fall and spring semesters. During summer sessions and semester breaks it is open every day except Saturday. Averett students can access the library's electronic resources at any time, from any location on the Internet (<http://www.averett.edu/library>).

The library offers 150,000 print and electronic books and media, more than 17,000 electronic and print journals, 83 subscription databases, Internet access, group and quiet study areas, Interlibrary loans, a computer classroom and open lab, a digital scanner, CD RW drives, and DVD players.

Students can request library reference services using a toll free telephone number (800-543-9440), local number (791-5692), e-mail ([AClib@averett.edu](mailto:AClib@averett.edu)), FAX number (434-791-5637), "Ask a Librarian" web form (<http://www.averett.edu/library/communicate>), or in person at the Reference Desk. Librarians offer library orientation and research classes throughout the year.

Library faculty encourage students to develop information literacy skills: the ability to define and articulate a problem, locate reliable sources of information, retrieve, evaluate and understand this literature, and use the knowledge gained to communicate effectively.

The administrative offices of Averett's **Graduate and Professional Studies Program** (GPS) are located on the bottom floor of Davenport Hall. A GPS admissions office is located on Robertson Ave. GPS also operates regional centers in Richmond and Tidewater.

The Danville Regional Airport houses the facility that Averett leases for the **Aeronautics Program**. The building includes 3,127 square feet of space which is used for all instruction related to supplemental ground instruction, operation manager's office, aircraft maintenance technician's office, and simulator room.

The **Averett University Equestrian Center**, located on 100 acres close to Pelham, North Carolina, is about 15 minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Facilities include a 46,000 square foot building which houses an indoor ring, eighteen stalls and a tack room. The lower stable building houses twenty-two stalls which have removable partitions, two tack rooms, student lounge, office, wash stall for horses and equipment, restroom, and a small laundry area. Outdoor facilities include paddocks and pastures, as well as three training areas: a round pen twenty-five meters in diameter, a dressage ring, and a jumping ring.

**North Campus**, located on approximately seventy acres at 707 Mount Cross Road in Danville, is about ten minutes driving time from the West Main campus. Located on this property is the **E. Stuart James Grant Athletic and Convocation Center**, which houses offices for the Athletic Department staff, the faculty in the Physical Education Department, training room, locker rooms and gymnasium. This facility will seat approximately 3,000. Also located on **North Campus** are playing fields for the intercollegiate athletic teams.



---

---

# ADMISSION

---

---

## I. Beginning Freshmen

The Admissions Committee attempts to select for enrollment those applicants considered best able to benefit from a college education at Averett. In making its decisions, the Admissions Committee considers many factors:

1. Graduation from a secondary school or its equivalent.
2. Grades from the applicant's secondary school.
3. Results of the College Entrance Examination Board Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) and/or the American College Test Assessment (ACT).
4. A college preparatory curriculum taken in the secondary school.
5. Evidence of the ability of the applicant to do college-level work.
6. Involvement by the applicant in extracurricular activities.

Factors that are not considered include race, religion, sex, age, handicap, and national or ethnic origin.

Applicants should provide the Admissions Office with:

1. A completed Application for Admission Form, which may be found at our website: [www.averett.edu](http://www.averett.edu). Applications for Fall entrance are accepted on a rolling basis but should be filed by May 1. Applications received after May 1 will be reviewed on a space available basis.
2. An Application Fee in the amount of \$35 for international applicants only. (The fee is not refundable, and is not applied to any subsequent charge by the University.)
3. A Transcript of credits completed, or in progress, from high school and any college attended.

All entering students should have completed satisfactorily fifteen academic units in a secondary school including at least four units of English, five units of mathematics and sciences (including Algebra I, Algebra II, Geometry and two lab sciences, **or**, Algebra I, Algebra II or Geometry, and three lab sciences) and three units of history and social sciences. [Beginning with students applying for admission for Fall 2007, sixteen academic units will be required including at least 4 English, 3 math, 3 lab sciences, 3 history and social sciences and 3 electives.]

4. SAT scores (Averett's code is 5017) or ACT scores (Averett's code is 4338) sent to the Averett University Admissions Office.
5. Before a student enrolls, a Student Health History form, provided by the Dean of Student Development or available online, must be completed and returned to Averett.

### **A. Notification of Acceptance**

Averett operates on the "rolling admissions" system; therefore, when all the necessary supporting documents arrive at the University, the Admissions Committee will review the application and promptly inform the applicant of the action taken. Upon receipt of a favorable decision, the applicant should remit a \$400 fee to confirm enrollment and to assure reservation in the residence halls. The reservation fee for commuting students is \$100. International students should confirm their enrollment with a \$6,000 deposit. This fee is refundable until May 1 (for fall entrance). After this date, this fee is non-refundable. An enrollment deposit will remain active if it is applied to a subsequent term within one year from the initial term of application.

### **B. Reactivating Admissions Applications**

The University retains admissions files for two years. An applicant who did not attend the University after having been accepted may reactivate the request for admission by providing the Admissions Office with a statement of the intent to reapply and with an official transcript of any college-level work undertaken since the original application.

### **C. Advanced Placement**

Advanced placement and academic credit toward a degree may be granted to the student who receives a grade of three, four, or five on the Advanced Placement Examinations of the College Entrance Examination Board. Credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett curriculum. Information about these examinations can be obtained from the College Board Advanced Placement Examination, Post Office Box 977, Princeton, New Jersey 08540 or [www.ets.org](http://www.ets.org).

### **D. College Placement Tests for New Freshmen Students**

#### **1. Mathematics**

All students entering Averett for the first time must take a mathematics placement test to ensure placement in the proper courses. These tests are administered during freshman orientation, and scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

#### **2. Foreign Language**

All students with two or more years of high school credit in French or Spanish must take a placement test in the respective foreign language. These tests are administered during freshman orientation, and scores are provided to advisors prior to registration for classes.

#### **3. Music**

All students seeking admission into the music major are required to audition. A good time to schedule an audition is during fall or spring open house. These auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the music department.

#### **4. Equestrian Studies**

All students who will be majoring in Equestrian Studies are required to take a riding placement test.

## II. Accelerated Admission and Dual Enrollment

**Accelerated Admission** may be granted to qualified high school seniors who wish to complete their secondary school graduation requirements at Averett. These admissions are handled on an individual case basis. **Dual Enrollment** permits students to attend courses at Averett for postsecondary credit while still enrolled at the high school. Both options are excellent ways for academically and socially advanced high school students to expand their educational opportunities. Interested students should follow the normal procedure for applying to the University. Applicants will be evaluated for admission using the following criteria.

1. The student must have the written approval from the high school principal to pursue Accelerated Admission or Dual Enrollment.
2. The student must have a minimum grade point average of 3.0 on a 4.0 scale and rank in the top 50% of the class. Accelerated Admission students must also score at least a combined total of 920 on the SAT or 19 on the ACT.
3. The course(s) attempted must be for college degree credits.
4. The student should demonstrate, through a personal interview, the level of personal maturity necessary to meet the demands of college.

It is the responsibility of the student to request that an official Averett transcript be sent to the high school after the completion of courses attempted.

Accelerated Admission and Dual Enrollment students are not eligible for state or federal financial aid or institutional grants/scholarships until they have completed their requirements for high school graduation. The high school must issue an official transcript or letter indicating that the graduation requirements have been fulfilled.

## III. International Students

International students must submit an international application and all required educational documents and test scores to the Admissions Office before an admissions decision can be made. These educational documents include certified English translations of both secondary school transcripts and official transcripts of any college-level work, and acceptable TOEFL (Test of English as a Foreign Language) or SAT scores. Students who are resident aliens must submit a copy of their **permanent resident card** with their application paperwork. The applicant is responsible for having the transcripts evaluated and translated into English and for all costs and fees associated with the service.

Agencies that provide those services are:

World Education Services, Inc.  
P.O. Box 5087  
Bowling Green Station  
New York, NY 10274-5087  
(212) 966-6311

Credentials Evaluation Service, Inc.  
P.O. Box 66940  
Los Angeles, CA 90066

Globe Language Services  
Evaluation Service  
319 Broadway  
New York, NY 10007  
(212) 227-1994

World Educational Credentials Evaluators College  
Planning  
P.O. Box 726  
Herndon, VA 22070  
(703) 689-0894

Josef Silny & Associates, Inc.  
7101 SW 102 Avenue  
Miami, FL 33173  
(305) 273-1616

Global Credential Evaluators, Inc.  
P.O. Box 36  
28 Westhampton Way  
Richmond, VA 23173-0036  
(804) 639-3660

After acceptance, a deposit of \$6,000 and a completed Certification of Finances form are required before an I-20 (student visa) can be issued. All payments must be made in US dollars.

#### **IV. Transfer Student Admission**

It is the responsibility of the student who wishes to transfer to Averett from another college to have a high school transcript and official transcripts of **all** previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating to Averett, a final official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Transfer students must submit a completed **Dean of Students Form** provided by the Admissions Office or available online. To be admitted to Averett, transfer students should have a minimum transfer GPA of 2.00 (out of a possible 4.00) and be in good academic and social standing at their previous institution.

##### **A. Placement Tests for Transfer Students**

All transfer students must take a mathematics placement test unless they have received AP credit for MTH 103 or higher, or successfully completed a college mathematics course that is transferable as MTH 103 or higher. The placement tests are administered during orientation. Information about these placement tests is available from the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

Any transfer student who plans to continue or pursue foreign language study at Averett should sit for the French or Spanish placement exam or see the department chair.

Any transfer student who plans to continue or pursue a major in equestrian studies is required to take a riding placement test.

##### **B. Writing Proficiency Exam**

All students are required to take the writing proficiency exam before they can register for a writing intensive course or for a literature course numbered 200 or higher. This exam will be offered for transfer students prior to registration for their first semester if they are transferring in ENG 111 and 112.

### **C. Transfer Credit**

Averett will transfer courses from regionally accredited institutions of higher education for which a grade of C or higher was received, provided such courses are applicable to the student's degree program at Averett. For those students who have received an associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses that were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

**The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.**

An official evaluation of transfer credit will be sent by the Registrar's Office after notification of acceptance.

Because institutions differ in the minimum scores required for awarding credit, Averett does not normally transfer credits for Advanced Placement, CLEP and similar nationally normed tests. The student must have an official copy of the test scores sent to Averett.

Credits are not normally transferred from proprietary schools or from non-accredited colleges. A student may use the challenge examination or develop a portfolio demonstrating prior learning to receive credit or waiver of specific courses. A department may recommend the waiver of a required course on the basis of course work which is not fully transferable.

**Averett University will accept transfer credit earned while a student is on suspension from another institution based on the policy of the suspending institution.**

### **D. International Baccalaureate Diploma**

Averett University will grant advanced standing and/or credit for International Baccalaureate higher level examinations. Minimum scores acceptable for credit are determined by each academic department. Specific information on transfer credit may be found at <http://www.averett.edu/admissions/transfer-guide.html>

### **E. Senior College Credit**

A student who plans to graduate from Averett must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college; the last 33 semester hours of work must be completed at Averett. No work will be transferred to Averett from another college until the student has been granted regular admission to Averett.

### **F. Direct Transfer Agreement**

Direct transfer, or articulation, agreements have been arranged with several two-year colleges. Such agreements follow careful comparisons of the curricula at Averett and at the two-year institution. Transfer students who have completed an associate's degree program covered under the agreement will be admitted as juniors and will have all course work which was credited toward the associate's degree transferred to Averett University. A transfer guide based on the agreement with the Virginia Community College System may be found at <http://www.averett.edu/admissions/transfer-guide.html>

**The one exception to that policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a grade of D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.**

## V. Special Students

A **Special Student** is, by definition, a non-degree seeking student. In order to apply with the Special Student status, a final high school transcript or an equivalent credential is required for a student who is either currently enrolled in high school, who has graduated from high school, working towards a GED, or who has never been enrolled in an accredited postsecondary institution. An unofficial college transcript is acceptable until such time as the student seeks degree-seeking status. The special student application should be received by the Admissions Office at least two weeks prior to the beginning of the term in which a student plans to enroll. Once approved, the student may continue to study as a special student at Averett in subsequent **consecutive** terms. If the student elects to stay out for one or more regular terms (fall or spring semester), then he/she must reapply for readmission as a special student. A special student may take day or evening classes and may be part-time or full-time. Special students are not eligible to receive financial aid.

To be admitted as a **degree-seeking student**, a special student must file an application for admission with the Admissions Office and satisfy regular entrance requirements. To graduate, a minimum of 33 hours must be earned at Averett after a student has obtained degree-seeking status.

Students who have been suspended from another college or university are ineligible to enroll at Averett under the Special Student status. The applicant must be in good standing at his/her former institution. Admission will be considered after the student serves one full semester of his/her suspension. If a student enrolls at Averett University as a Special Student while on academic suspension/dismissal, he/she forfeits his/her registration.

A degree-seeking applicant cannot request Special Student status after his/her degree-seeking application was denied by the Admissions Committee for the same term, unless new, academically pertinent information is submitted to the Committee.

A borderline student, who first applies as a Special Student as recommended by the Admissions Committee, may be allowed to take 3-6 hours of coursework at Averett. The Averett earned GPA may then be viewed as part of the student's GPA should the student apply for degree-seeking status.

Special students enrolled full-time are eligible to live on campus. Any exceptions or appeals to this policy must be presented to the Dean of Students or the Director of Residence Life.

## VI. Readmission

Any student who:

1. has attended Averett as a degree-seeking student and
2. has withdrawn, been granted a leave of absence, or not returned for the next regular semester and
3. would like to be readmitted to Averett

**MUST** complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

A student who attends another college and then seeks readmission to Averett must reapply through the Registrar's Office. An official record of all college-level work taken since leaving Averett should accompany this request for readmission. Transfer credit is applied toward an Averett degree based on regular transfer policies.

A student seeking readmission after being on academic or social suspension for one semester must submit a written request for readmission to the Academic Policies Council. The letter should be sent to the Dean of Arts and Sciences at least six weeks prior to the beginning of the term for which the student is seeking readmission. **Coursework taken at another college while on suspension from Averett is not accepted for transfer.**

A student who has been placed on academic suspension and who is readmitted is readmitted under conditions of extended probation. Also, any student who was on academic warning or probation at the time of withdrawal from the University and who is subsequently readmitted will be readmitted with the same status which was in effect at the time of withdrawal.

## **VII. Resident and Commuter Policy**

Students normally are classed as resident students unless they meet one of the following conditions:

1. Students who reside with their parents or a close relative within the city of Danville or within commuting distance.
2. Students who have previously established residence in the city or the immediate area while attending Danville Community College, Patrick Henry Community College, Southside Virginia Community College, Piedmont Community College or Rockingham Community College.
3. Students who have established residence in the city of Danville or the immediate area one year prior to enrolling at Averett University.
4. Students who are transferring in at least 90 semester hours of credit.
5. Students who are married.
6. Students 23 years of age or older.
7. Students who have served 180 consecutive days of active duty in the military (reserve and National Guard members would not be eligible).

Appeals should be addressed to the Residence Life Office.

## **VIII. Other Admissions**

### **A. Non-Traditional Degree Admissions**

Information about the Individually Designed Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL) is found on page 47 of this catalog. You may also consult the Dean of Admissions at Averett University. Information about the Graduate and Professional Studies programs (GPS) is found on page 47 of this catalog. Admissions requirements, program descriptions and requirements and course descriptions for GPS are found in a separate catalog.

### **B. Graduate Education Admission**

Information regarding admission to the Master of Education Program may be obtained from the Graduate Education Program Director. See [The Catamount](#) for more information.

## Campus Visits

Averett welcomes prospective students and parents throughout the year. As a service to visitors, guided tours of the campus are provided. The tours include visits to student residences, the dining hall, the library, and classrooms. A personal interview with an admissions counselor is highly recommended and meetings with individual students and/or faculty members are possible. The Admissions Office is open weekdays from 8:30 a.m. to 4:30 p.m. Saturday visits are scheduled from September through May from 9 a.m. to Noon.

Special visit days and open houses are excellent times to plan a campus visit. A calendar of Open House events and workshops is available at [www.averett.edu/admissions](http://www.averett.edu/admissions). Because large numbers of prospective students visit the campus, the Admissions Office requests that interested persons inform the office of plans for a visit before arrival.

Telephone 434-791-4996  
Toll Free 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388)  
FAX: 434-797-2784  
E-mail: [admit@averett.edu](mailto:admit@averett.edu).

Correspondence regarding admissions and campus visits should be addressed to:  
Admissions Office  
Averett University  
420 West Main Street  
Danville, Virginia 24541.



## Admission Requirements

The following table contains information that prospective students must submit to the Admissions Office. Contact the Admissions Office for further information and catalog explanation.

	Application	Application Fee	High School	College Transcript	SAT or ACT Scores	Letter of Recommendation	Advanced Placement Scores	Readmission Form	Dean of Students Form	Enrollment Reservation Fee
Beginning Freshman	X		X	X <sup>1</sup>	X <sup>3</sup>		X <sup>1</sup>			X
Transfer Student	X			X			X <sup>1</sup>		X <sup>1</sup>	X
International Student	X	X	X	X <sup>1</sup>	X <sup>5</sup>					X
Former Averett Student (who will transfer credit in)				X				X	X	X
Former Averett Student (not graduated; no transfer credit)								X		X
Veteran	X <sup>2</sup>		X <sup>1</sup>	X <sup>1</sup>					X <sup>1</sup>	X
Special Student (non-degree seeking)	X		X <sup>4</sup>	X <sup>4</sup>						X
IDEAL Program										
Beginning Freshman	X		X			X <sup>3</sup>	X <sup>3</sup>			X
Transfer Student	X		X	X					X <sup>1</sup>	X

GPS-Contact GPS Office for admission information

Graduate Education Programs-Contact Director

IDEAL-Contact Director of IDEAL Program

<sup>1</sup>If applicable--<sup>2</sup>Contact Office of Registrar for other requirements--<sup>3</sup>Unless student has been out of high school for 5 or more years--<sup>4</sup>For advisement purposes (if applicable)--<sup>5</sup>TOEFL may be substituted for SAT or ACT for non-English speaking students – <sup>6</sup>Recommended but not required

---

---

# ACADEMIC PROGRAM AND REGULATIONS

---

---

## Degrees

### Associate of Arts

A student may earn an Associate of Arts degree with a major in Liberal Arts by completing the core general education requirements and a minimum of 60 semester hours. A minimum of 16 semester hours must be taken at Averett. The general education requirements begin on page 22 of this catalog.

### Bachelor of Applied Science

Averett University offers the Bachelor of Applied Science degree to those individuals who meet the following requirements:

1. Possess an Associate of Applied Science degree from a regionally accredited institution with a 2.00 grade point average on work counted toward the associate's degree.
2. Complete a minimum of 33 semester hours at Averett University, including a minor in another field. Examples include:

Associate of Applied Science  
Degree

Microcomputer Systems  
Office Technology  
Printing Management  
Administration of Justice

Minor Field

Computer Science or Math  
Business or Computer Science  
Business  
Sociology

Note: Because of State licensure requirements, courses in the Department of Education may not be offered for the minor area.

3. Complete all Averett requirements for the baccalaureate degree, including a minimum of 60 semester hours from a senior institution.

### Bachelor of Arts, Bachelor of Science

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree by completing the core general education requirements along with a major area of study. A minimum of 123 semester hours is required for graduation. Requirements for specific majors may be found in departmental descriptions beginning on page 51. The general education requirements begin on page 22. A complete list of the requirements for graduation may be found on page 32.

### Associate of Science, Bachelor of Business Administration, Master of Business Administration

See the catalog for the Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS) Program.

### Master of Education

See [The Catamount](#) for information about this degree.

---

---

# GENERAL EDUCATION CURRICULUM

---

---

## Goals of the General Education Curriculum

The Averett University curriculum seeks to develop students as lifelong learners with the appropriate skills and knowledge to become creative and critical thinkers, effective communicators, and positive contributors to society. Moreover, we encourage students to examine myriad cultural expressions and values so that they may develop an appreciation of the contributions of others and acquire knowledge that may serve as a foundation for continuing development.

*I. Averett University seeks to enhance in students the following fundamental skills, which are requisite for entertaining important intellectual ideas:*

### **A. Fluency in Oral and Written Communication**

The ability to comprehend others and to express themselves clearly enables students to participate freely in the lively exchange of ideas that characterizes the search for truth.

Accordingly, Averett University encourages students to become fluent in reading, writing, speaking, and listening. The University considers passing two writing-intensive courses, two oral-intensive courses, and the writing proficiency exam to be a sufficient demonstration of competence for this goal.

### **B. Mathematical Understanding**

In a world where quantitative information forms the basis for inquiry into many diverse areas, citizens must have the mathematical foundation necessary for understanding and critically evaluating this information.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' facility with the language, techniques, theory, and applications of mathematics to build fluency in the communication of mathematical ideas. The University defines the skill set for MTH 103 to be the minimum level of competence for this goal. Students may demonstrate these skills by passing MTH 103 or its equivalent (at Averett or at another college) or a higher level math course.

### **C. Critical Thinking**

Critical thinking is essential to the ability to analyze and solve problems, make intelligent decisions, and explain ideas to others.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop the critical thinking of students by improving their analytic skills and by giving them the tools to evaluate information. The University considers the entire General Education core to address this competency, and considers completion of the core to be sufficient demonstration of competence in critical thinking.

### **D. Technological Literacy**

The explosion of advances in information technology poses a challenge to citizens. Students must develop the ability to adjust to changes in technology that will continue to evolve rapidly after their formal education is completed.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to provide a foundation for adapting to future technological advances by involving students in the use of current technology across the university curriculum to accomplish intellectual tasks. The University defines competence in this area by a series of skills, which may be demonstrated through passing a class (CSS 113 or 114) or by demonstrating the skills to the satisfaction of one or more faculty members. In the latter case, the faculty member(s) will fill out the “Technological Literacy Competency” tracking sheet for the student to submit to the Registrar’s Office. Computer Science and Computer Information Systems majors automatically fulfill this requirement.

## ***II. Averett University encourages enlightened participation in society through exploration of cultural expressions:***

### **A. The Cultural Context**

#### **Historical Awareness**

Citizens who are capable of confident and effective action in today's world require an awareness of the past that can inform them of historical forces that shape current events.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to provide students with a broad historical context for understanding today's events by examining the intellectual and social roots of civilization. Students may demonstrate these competencies by passing HIS 101-102.

#### **Knowledge of Other Cultures**

Today's students must understand the differences among various cultures and the commonality of concerns shared by all cultures.

Accordingly, by providing students experiences with cultures other than their own, Averett University seeks to cultivate a more cosmopolitan view of the world, wherein students seek experiences outside their own culture. Students may demonstrate this competency in a variety of ways described on page 26 of this Catalog.

#### **Appreciation and Understanding of Literature**

An understanding and appreciation of literature is important to the development of students as thoughtful and perceptive individuals. A careful study of literature makes students aware of the relationship between literary works and the cultural/historical milieu out of which they come. Such a study also makes students more aware of the timelessness of literature, which reflects the unchanging predicament of all men and women.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' abilities to comprehend, analyze, and discuss literature. Students may demonstrate this competency by passing an English literature course numbered 200 or higher (except ENG 316 and ENG470).

### **B. Personal Development**

#### **Awareness of Values**

As citizens of an increasingly complex and diverse world, individuals are required to make informed ethical decisions and value judgments that affect the quality of life. It is essential for students to understand the bases for their own moral philosophies and those of others and to be able to assume responsibility for their decisions.

Accordingly, Averett University encourages students to examine their personal value systems, relating them to the religious, historical, and philosophical underpinnings of the larger society's moral traditions. Students may demonstrate this competency by fulfilling the General Education requirement for six hours in Religion/Philosophy as described on page22.

### **Understanding of Human Interaction and Social Institutions**

The effectiveness of members of society is dependent upon their ability to interact with each other and within social institutions.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop in students an intellectual framework for understanding human relationships and the societal context within which they occur. Students may demonstrate this competency by fulfilling the General Education requirement for 9 hours in the social sciences (in addition to HIS 101-102).

### **Scientific Discovery**

In order to function in a world largely shaped by scientific activity, students must have the foundation necessary to understand, interpret, and evaluate scientific information.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to develop students' understanding of the scientific method of examining and explaining natural phenomena. Students may demonstrate this competency by passing at least one laboratory course in the natural sciences.

### **The Human Aesthetic Response**

The fine arts represent a significant means of creative expression through which societies define and reveal themselves. Knowledge of the forms and conventions of the arts enhances students' ability to respond to the creative process of the human intellect.

Accordingly, Averett University seeks to heighten students' aesthetic sensitivity and to encourage involvement with the artistic endeavors of their communities. Students may fulfill this requirement by passing the 6 hours of fine arts required in the General Education core.

## CORE GENERAL EDUCATION REQUIREMENTS

### Requirements for Associate of Arts, Bachelor of Applied Science, Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science:

#### ENGLISH 9 semester hours

\_\_\_ ENG 111\*\*

\_\_\_ ENG 112\*\*

\_\_\_ Any literature course for which the prerequisite has been met, with the exception of ENG 316 and ENG 470.

\*\*Averett University does not accept a transfer grade of D in ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research or ENG 112, Introduction to Literature (or their equivalents).

#### FINE ARTS 6 semester hours

Two courses from the following:

\_\_\_ ART 100                    \_\_\_ MUS 100

\_\_\_ ART 201                    \_\_\_ MUS 260

\_\_\_ ART 205                    \_\_\_ MUS 261

\_\_\_ ART 305                    \_\_\_ TH 105

\_\_\_ ART 306                    \_\_\_ TH 220

\_\_\_ ART 405                    \_\_\_ TH 221

#### HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCES 15 semester hours

\_\_\_ HIS 101

\_\_\_ HIS 102

Plus three courses (9 hours) from two or more of the following fields:

##### Economics

\_\_\_ Any Economics course except ECO 300.

##### History

\_\_\_ Any History course for which the prerequisite has been met.

##### Political Science

\_\_\_ Any Political Science course for which the prerequisite has been met.

##### Psychology

\_\_\_ Any Psychology course for which the prerequisite has been met, except PSY 120.

##### Sociology/Criminal Justice

\_\_\_ Any Sociology or Criminal Justice course for which the prerequisite has been met.

#### RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY 6 semester hours

\_\_\_ REL 101 or REL 102

\_\_\_ Any 3 hour course in Religion or Philosophy except REL 453, 454.

Additional General Education Requirements for an **Associate of Arts** or a **Bachelor of Arts Degree**:

**MATHEMATICS\*** 3 semester hours

- \_\_\_ MTH 103
- \_\_\_ MTH 151
- \_\_\_ MTH 171
- \_\_\_ MTH 201
- \_\_\_ Any other Math course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Students who wish to be licensed to teach in grades PK-6 should take the following 6 hours instead of the Math courses listed above.

- \_\_\_ MTH 111
- \_\_\_ MTH 112

\*All entering students who do not offer transfer credits or Advanced Placement (AP) credits in math are expected to take a mathematics placement test. The placement test will help determine whether a student is placed in MTH 100, 103, 151, 171, 201 or higher. A student who is placed in 104, 201, or 202 but elects to take a lower level mathematics course will receive credit for it, but the course will not satisfy a general education requirement in mathematics.

A student who is placed in MTH 100, Fundamentals of Mathematics, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in MTH 103 or MTH 111. **Credit for MTH 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

**NATURAL SCIENCE** 4 semester hours\*

- \_\_\_ BIO 101
- \_\_\_ Any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met.
- \_\_\_ CH 101                      \_\_\_ ES 208                      \_\_\_ PSC 201                      \_\_\_ PSY 120
- \_\_\_ CH 102                      \_\_\_ PSC 101                      \_\_\_ PSC 202
- \_\_\_ ENS 215                      \_\_\_ PSC 110                      \_\_\_ PSC 203

\* One science course that includes a laboratory experience

**FOREIGN LANGUAGE\*\***, \*\*\* 6-14 semester hours\*

- \_\_\_ FR 101                      \_\_\_ SPA 101
- \_\_\_ FR 102                      \_\_\_ SPA 102
- \_\_\_ FR 201                      \_\_\_ SPA 201
- \_\_\_ FR 202                      \_\_\_ SPA 202
- \_\_\_ FR 221                      \_\_\_ SPA 221
- \_\_\_ FR 222                      \_\_\_ SPA 222
- \_\_\_ FR 225                      \_\_\_ SPA 315
- \_\_\_ FR 317                      \_\_\_ SPA 316
- \_\_\_ FR 318                      \_\_\_ SPA 317
- \_\_\_ FR 319
  
- \_\_\_ GRK 101                      \_\_\_ HEB 101
- \_\_\_ GRK 102                      \_\_\_ HEB 102

\*Dependent upon placement test results.

\*\* Students must pass six semester hours at the 200 level or above (The courses to be taken will be determined by the placement test results.), or they must complete GRK 101, GRK 102 and HEB 101, HEB 102.

\*\*\*Students whose native language is other than English may complete the language requirements for a B.A. degree by passing a second English course numbered 200 or higher.

Additional General Education Requirements for a **Bachelor of Applied Science** or a **Bachelor of Science Degree**:

**MATHEMATICS\*** 6 semester hours

- \_\_\_ MTH 103
- \_\_\_ MTH 151
- \_\_\_ MTH 171
- \_\_\_ MTH 201
- \_\_\_ Any other Math course for which the prerequisite has been met.

Students who wish to be licensed to teach in grades PK-6 should take the following 6 hours instead of the Math courses listed above.

- \_\_\_ MTH 111
- \_\_\_ MTH 112

\*All entering students who do not offer transfer credits or Advanced Placement (AP) credits in math are expected to take a mathematics placement test. The placement test will help determine whether a student is placed in MTH 100, 103, 151, 201 or higher. A student who is placed in 104, 201, or 202 but elects to take a lower level mathematics course will receive credit for it, but the course will not satisfy a general education requirement in mathematics.

A student who is placed in MTH 100, Fundamentals of Mathematics, must complete that course successfully before enrolling in MTH 103 or MTH 111. **Credit for MTH 100 may not be used to meet the 123 hours required for graduation.**

**NATURAL SCIENCE** 8 semester hours\*

- \_\_\_ BIO 101
- \_\_\_ Any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met.
- \_\_\_ CH 101            \_\_\_ ES 208            \_\_\_ PSC 201            \_\_\_ PSY 120
- \_\_\_ CH 102            \_\_\_ PSC 101            \_\_\_ PSC 202
- \_\_\_ ENS 215            \_\_\_ PSC 110            \_\_\_ PSC 203

\* Two science courses that include laboratory experience

## Proficiency Requirements

The educated individual is expected to possess a number of skills and competencies. To ensure that Averett students have demonstrated a minimal level of proficiency in many of these areas, the faculty established methods of assessment and standards of achievement for written and oral communication, technological literacy, and knowledge of other cultures.

### 1. Writing Competency

A. Students must take two courses designated as **writing-intensive** in addition to ENG 111. These two courses may be in any discipline; however, ENG 112, 201, 202, and 220 will not count as writing-intensive courses. Writing-intensive courses:

- a. must include instruction and feedback on writing.
- b. must have a minimum of 15 pages of writing.
- c. should contain one or more of the following types of writing required as the instructor deems appropriate:
  - research paper or essays
  - book reviews
  - critical analyses, case studies, and/or summaries of articles.



- d. must be designed so that the student must pass the writing requirements in order to pass the course.
- e. should have approximately half of the writing returned with suggestions for improvement. The student should then submit the revised writing (or new writing) reflecting these suggestions.

Students may transfer writing-intensive courses from another institution by submitting a syllabus from the course they took to the Dean of Arts and Sciences or to the Registrar. If the course can be judged to satisfy the requirements listed above, it can count towards the completion of the graduation requirement.

B. Students must pass a **writing proficiency exam** administered through the English Department. Students must pass the writing proficiency exam before taking any literature course or any writing intensive course.

## 2. Oral Competency

Each student must take two courses labeled **oral-intensive** and pass the oral requirements of each course to successfully fulfill requirements for graduation. One of the courses must be in the student's major or minor.

Courses labeled as oral-intensive must have a minimum requirement of ten minutes of oral presentations divided as each instructor deems appropriate for the objectives of the course. The presentations will be evaluated according to the university-approved rating scale.

The student will receive a grade of P or NP (No Pass) and the grade remains separate from the evaluation of the academic work accrued for credit in the course.

Students may transfer oral intensive courses from another institution by submitting a syllabus from the course they took to the Dean of Arts and Sciences or to the Registrar. If the course can be judged to satisfy the requirements listed above, it can count towards the completion of the graduation requirement.

## 3. Technological Literacy

Students should be able to:

- use appropriate technology to accomplish their intellectual tasks.
- demonstrate competence in the use of computers for at least **two categories** of tasks.

Students may demonstrate the skills listed below by passing CSS 113 or CSS 114. Alternatively, the student's expertise may be confirmed by one or more faculty members, who will sign the appropriate sections of the "Technological Literacy Competency" tracking sheet. The student must then submit it to the Registrar's Office for inclusion in his/her record.

### **Category A: Word Processing/Presentation Software/Desktop Publishing Packages**

**Students should be able to complete such assignments as:**

- retrieve and save document files
- use basic features of the software such as **underlining, bolding text**
- change text size, and work with different fonts
- block and move text or graphics (e.g., cutting and pasting)
- use spell checking or grammar checking features of the program
- navigate menu features
- manipulate document layout

**Category B: Spreadsheet/Financial/Accounting Packages**

**Students should be able to complete such assignments as:**

- retrieve and save worksheet files
- enter data into rows and columns and perform basic operations such as totaling and averaging columns and rows
- use basic formulas (e.g., to get totals) and format cells
- navigate menu features

**Category C: Database Packages**

**Students should be able to complete such assignments as:**

- retrieve and save database files
- understand basic database terminology (e.g., fields and records)
- enter and edit data
- query the database
- navigate menu features

**Category D: Communications/Internet Packages**

**Students should be able to complete such assignments as:**

- successfully access the Internet
- compose, send, and retrieve electronic mail messages
- use a world wide browser to access the World Wide Web
- use one or more search engines to find information on the World Wide Web
- navigate menu features

**Category E: Math/Science/Statistical Packages**

**Students should have skills comparable to those outlined in the aforementioned packages.** Drill and practice software would not be considered appropriate packages for demonstrating minimal technological literacy.

**4. Knowledge of Other Cultures**

All Bachelor of Arts candidates fulfill this competency through their foreign language requirement. Students seeking the Bachelor of Science degree may meet this competency by fulfilling one of the following options:

- a. complete a course (minimum of three-semester hours) in which the major focus is cultural norms, values, and/or belief systems of a culture or cultures not their own. These include, but are not limited to, HIS 101-102, REL 101, REL 102, SOC 230, or POS/HIS 455.
- b. participate in university-sponsored study-abroad experience.
- c. complete a course which has a major focus on language or traditions of another culture. Averett courses which will meet the requirement are:

GRK or HEB 101, 102, Introduction to Greek/Hebrew I, II  
FR or SPA 101, 102, Beginning French/Spanish I, II  
FR or SPA 201, 202, Intermediate French/Spanish I, II  
FR or SPA 221, Conversation and Listening  
FR or SPA 222, Advanced Writing and Grammar  
FR 225 or SPA 315, Introduction to Literature  
Any 300-level FR or SPA culture and civilization course

Students also may present evidence of proficiency in a foreign language by transferring course credits from another institution. It is the student's responsibility to see that a transcript from the other school is on file in the Registrar's Office at Averett University. International students may meet this requirement in either of the above ways as long as the language presented is not their native language.

- d. Prepare a portfolio of multicultural experiences.

Students should develop a portfolio which includes, but is not limited to, at least one of the following experiences:

1. Foreign Travel: Student will spend a minimum of one week in a foreign country with a plane ticket, passport, or visa to verify the length of stay. The student will also submit photo and/or video records of the trip and a travel diary that describes the culture visited. The travel diary should record such things as the customs, food, language, dress, climate, history, fine arts, etc. of the country or countries visited.

2. One-on-One Cultural Experience: For a minimum period of at least one academic semester, the student will live with, or will host, a person from another country. The student will keep a journal recording the interactions with this person and what has been learned about the visitor's homeland including the customs, food, language, dress, climate, history, fine arts, etc. The journal should also include an "interview" with the visitor about his/her reactions to the United States.

3. Other Multicultural Experiences: A student may gain multicultural experiences in other ways: attending exhibits, festivals, lectures, international dance, musical and/or athletic performances, reviewing documentary films or videos. Doing volunteer work with international groups such as migrant workers might enhance the student's cultural awareness.

The student will complete at least ten of these types of activities with no more than three of any one type of activity (e.g., videos, dance performances). For each activity, the student must present a typed one-page summary. After completion of all activities, the student must present a written summary of the entire experience which indicates the extent to which the student's cultural awareness has been enhanced. The student should complete all ten of these activities after enrolling in Averett University.

## Majors and Minors

In order to graduate with a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree from Averett University, students must complete the core general education requirements and a major.

Four alternative approaches may be followed in developing a major area of study.

**I. The traditional major with a minor:** Such programs require a specified amount of work in a major area of study with an additional 18 semester hours in a minor concentration or in related fields. The requirements for a major area of study vary according to the department and are described under each academic department in the section on Degree Programs.

**II. Interdisciplinary majors:** The University has designed several majors that cross traditional disciplinary lines. The requirements for such majors have been specified by the faculty and are described in the section on Degree Programs.

**III. Liberal Studies major:** The University has designed a special degree program that allows a student to plan a course of study combining course work from a minimum of three different departments. Procedures for the development of a Liberal Studies major are described on page 30 of this catalog. The Liberal Studies major may not have a double major.

**IV. Individually designed interdisciplinary majors:** The faculty recognizes that some students have unique educational goals and interests which may not be best realized by means of traditional majors or the structured interdisciplinary programs. Such students are encouraged to propose a plan of study which will draw broadly upon the learning resources of the University. The plan must be approved by a faculty committee and the Dean of Arts and Sciences. The student may not have a double major with the individually designed interdisciplinary major. Inquiries regarding this option should be addressed to the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

The student's Averett University transcript will show a maximum of two (2) majors and two (2) minors.

**The following is a list of degrees, majors, minors and teacher licensure fields available to students.**

### Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:

Aerospace Management	Elementary Education (See Liberal Studies)
Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice	Equestrian Studies
Art	Liberal Studies (with or without teacher certification)
Biology	Mathematics
Biology/Chemistry	Mathematical Decision Science
Business Administration	Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science
Chemistry	Psychology
Computer Information Systems	Sociology
Computer Science	Sociology/Criminal Justice (4-year Program)
Criminal Justice (See Sociology/Criminal Justice)	Theatre with Teaching License

**Students must earn a Bachelor of Arts degree in the following disciplines:**

Art	Journalism
English	Music
English/History (Pre-Law)	Political Science
English/Theatre	Religion
History	Theatre
History/Social Science (with Teaching License)	

**Students must earn a Bachelor of Science degree in the following disciplines:**

Medical Technology  
Physical Education: Athletic Training  
Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program)

**Teacher Certification is available in the following disciplines:**

Art	History/Social Science
Biology	Liberal Studies (Elementary Education)
Chemistry	Mathematics
English	Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education
English/Theatre	Theatre

**Add-on teaching endorsements are available in the following areas:**

Computer Science	Special Education (Minor)
Journalism	Speech

**Academic minors are available in the following disciplines:**

Art	Journalism
Biology	Leadership Studies
Business Administration	Mathematics
Chemistry	Music
Church Ministries	Physical Education
Computer Information Systems	Political Science
Computer Science	Psychology
Criminal Justice	Religion
English	Sociology
Equestrian Studies	Spanish
French	Theatre
History	

## **Minors**

In addition to a major concentration, each student may elect to have a minor area of concentration to complement the major. A minor is available in disciplines noted previously. A minor normally requires the completion of at least 18 semester hours, 9 hours of which must be at the 300 or 400 level, unless otherwise specified by the department. Specific requirements for minors in each discipline are indicated in the Degree Program section of this catalog. A student may not elect a minor from courses that have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in Art and minor in Art History. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett. Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## **Formal Declaration of Major and Minor**

**Major** - Each student is expected to file a declaration of major with the Registrar by the beginning of the junior year. Students who wish to change majors or add a second major must notify the Registrar. **Any change in major may result in the delay of the date of graduation.**

Some professional programs have special admissions requirements and procedures. The student should consult the section of this catalog that describes those programs and/or see the chairs of the specific departments.

**Minor** - Students who elect to have a minor area of concentration must file a declaration of minor with the Registrar. Minors should be declared before the start of the senior year and all requirements must be completed through regularly scheduled classes. A student may not elect a minor from courses which have the same departmental prefix as the major, e.g., a student may not major in BSA:Accounting and minor in Business Administration.

## **Liberal Studies Major (Without Teacher Licensure)**

A student may earn either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science Degree in Liberal Studies.

The major will be planned in conjunction with an advisor and must be approved by a Liberal Studies Committee. The procedures for developing a Liberal Studies major are outlined below:

1. The student must develop a preliminary plan for the Liberal Studies major with the Associate Dean of Arts and Sciences.
2. The student and the Associate Dean will select a faculty committee which will guide the student's academic program. The committee will be composed of a faculty member from each of the three areas of concentration.
3. When the faculty committee, the student, and the Associate Dean have approved the courses to be included in the major, the Registrar's Office will prepare a degree plan.
4. The committee and the student must approve any changes in the degree plan.
5. The Associate Dean of Arts and Sciences will serve as the student's advisor or will assign a faculty member from one of the areas of concentration to serve as the academic advisor.

## **The following policies govern this degree program.**

1. The student must meet all general education requirements of the University.
2. The student must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college, the last 33 of which must be at Averett.
3. The student must maintain a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 in the courses submitted for the Liberal Studies major.

4. The student must select three areas of concentration and must complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in each area, exclusive of the general education requirements, with a maximum of 21 semester hours being accepted from any one area of concentration.

5. The student must complete a minimum of 40 semester hours at the 300 or 400 level. Approximately 27 of these hours should be taken at Averett University.

6. The student must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree if two of the three departments in the major are from Art, English, History, Journalism, Music, Political Science, Religion or Theatre.

7. The student must elect the Bachelor of Science degree if two of the three departments in the major are from Biology, Chemistry, Business Administration, Education, Mathematics, Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science, Psychology or Sociology.

A student who has declared a Liberal Studies major and who subsequently elects to change to a major in a specific discipline must satisfy all of the departmental requirements for that major. The student may not have a double major with the Liberal Studies major.

### **Liberal Studies: (With Teacher Licensure)**

All candidates desiring a teaching license in Elementary (PK-6) Education must complete requirements for the Liberal Studies degree as outlined on page 110 of this catalog.

### **Pre-Professional Studies**

Averett provides pre-professional preparation for students planning to enter schools of dentistry, law, medicine, nursing or theology. In addition, the University has entered into an articulation agreement with the New York College of Podiatric Medicine. Although the University does not offer these pre-professional preparations as majors (with the exception of English/History [Pre-Law]), students are assigned an academic advisor who is cognizant of the appropriate courses for entrance into one of the professional schools. The student who anticipates attending a professional school, however, should consult the catalog of the preferred professional school in selecting courses at Averett University.

### **Honors Program**

The Honors Program, operating within the liberal arts philosophy of the University, enhances the academic life of the institution, creates a scholarly ethos, provides an academic challenge, and recognizes students' needs to express creativity, to develop one's humanity, and to see the world from different vantage points.

The Honors Program is described in detail on page 150.

### **International Study Opportunities**

Averett University encourages students to gain learning experiences that can only be obtained by an extended period of time in another country or culture. In addition to occasional travel courses conducted by Averett faculty, the instructors in French and Spanish can assist the student with arrangements to study in countries where those languages prevail. Semester or year abroad programs are also available through cooperative arrangements with other institutions. Through membership in the Consortium for Global Education, opportunities are made available for study of various durations in the Peoples Republic of China, the former USSR, and Eastern European countries. For information about these study abroad programs, the student should contact the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

Students majoring in Equestrian Studies may study for one semester or a summer in England in a course specifically designed to prepare them for the British Horse Society Assistant Instructor's Certificate. Students should consult with the Chair of the Department of Equestrian Studies for details concerning the B.H.S.A.I. Program.

## Requirements for Graduation

The basic requirements for an undergraduate degree from Averett University are a minimum of 123 semester hours of credit (60 semester hours of credit for the associate degrees) with at least a 2.00 grade point average on all work attempted as well as on courses offered to complete the major. Other specific requirements are listed below:

1. Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.
2. Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study.
3. Students must satisfy competencies in writing, oral communication, technology, and knowledge of other cultures. (see page 24 of this catalog).
4. The last 33 semester hours of academic work prior to graduation must be taken at Averett University.
5. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 60 semester hours at a senior college or university, at least 33 of which must be from Averett University.
6. Transfer students must satisfactorily complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in the major field at Averett University. Individual programs may have higher semester-hour requirements.
7. Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status. (See the section on Special Students on page 14 of this catalog.)
8. Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by the designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. See the university calendar for the exact dates. Appropriate forms are available in the Registrar's Office or online at [www.averett.edu/academics/registrar/index.html](http://www.averett.edu/academics/registrar/index.html).
9. Students must have completed all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.
10. Students must have met all financial obligations to the University in order to participate in graduation. All tuition, fees, fines, bookstore charges and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.

In addition to the requirements listed above, students must participate in a university-wide exit questionnaire and/or departmental exit examination. Students should consult with the individual department for details.

It is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.

A student may choose to graduate under the requirements of any Averett University catalog in effect from the date of the student's entrance through the year of the student's graduation, providing enrollment for fall and spring terms has not been interrupted.

If continuous enrollment in the University has been interrupted for one or more semesters, the student must graduate under the catalog that is current upon his/her readmission.

If degree requirements are changed so that a once-required course is no longer offered, the department or University may substitute a comparable course requirement.



## **Second Baccalaureate Degree**

The student who has a baccalaureate degree from Averett University or another accredited institution of higher education may receive a second baccalaureate degree upon the successful completion of an additional minimum of 33 semester hours of work at Averett University. Specific course requirements for the major field for the second degree must be satisfied. The student will be considered to have completed the General Education requirements of Averett University by possessing a baccalaureate degree. However, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Science and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Arts, the student must have completed the intermediate level of a modern foreign language or Greek 101, 102 and Hebrew 101, 102. Similarly, if the first degree was a Bachelor of Arts and the second degree is to be a Bachelor of Science, the student must have completed at least 6 semester hours of mathematics and at least 2 lab sciences (8 hours).

The student may add a second major to his/her degree after graduating provided the second major is completed within one calendar year following the awarding of the diploma. The student must declare intent to complete the second major prior to the final semester of coursework for the first major.

---

---

# ACADEMIC STANDARDS AND INTEGRITY

---

---

## Class Attendance

Regular class attendance is an obligation implicit in the agreement between the students who apply for admission and the college which admits them. Anyone enrolled in a course is responsible for the work done in all class meetings. **Therefore, the University expects students to attend all class meetings of the courses for which they are enrolled.**

No right or privilege exists which justifies absence from any number of class meetings. There is no official distinction between an excused and unexcused absence. It is the student's responsibility to notify his/her instructors if he/she will be absent from a class because of an official university representation, such as concerts, intercollegiate athletic events, equestrian events, or field trips. This notification is to inform only and is not an excuse for the absence. The student is responsible for the work done in the class meetings that are missed because of events stated above. The student should determine with each instructor whether that absence will affect the grade in that course.

Specific attendance requirements for each course are included in the syllabus provided by the instructor of the course. Both the student and the instructor are expected to be concerned and responsible in the matter of class attendance and to keep records of any necessary absences. When absences endanger a student's academic standing or indicate serious lack of commitment to the work of the course, appropriate action should be taken to remedy the situation.

If a student does not attend the first two class meetings at the beginning of the semester, the instructor may notify the Registrar's Office to drop the student from the course in order to allow students on a waiting list to add the course. Once a student has attended a class, failure to continue to attend class does not constitute a withdrawal from the course. The procedures for withdrawal from a course are found on page 44 in this catalog. **Students who stop attending classes without formally withdrawing from the course will receive a grade of F for the semester.**

## The Honor Code

One mark of an educated individual is personal integrity. The members of the Averett University community are committed to a code of behavior which may be found in the Student Handbook. A student is thus pledged to academic honesty. As academic honesty is considered to be the foundation of the educational enterprise, any form of cheating or plagiarism is considered to be an affront to the entire University community and may result in suspension from the University. Students should carefully study the honor code, and should be especially familiar with the definitions of cheating and plagiarism.

1. Cheating - Includes the following behaviors:
  - a. copying another student's answers while completing any class assignment or during in-class and take-home examinations.
  - b. using notes, books or any unauthorized aids during an examination.
  - c. discussing answers during in-class examinations.
  - d. submitting another student's work as one's own.
  - e. stealing another student's work.
2. Plagiarism - Submitting a paper in which the language, ideas or thought are identical to published or unpublished material from another source without correctly giving credit to that source.

## Evaluation of Academic Work

Academic work is evaluated and grades are assigned at the end of each academic term in order to indicate a student's level of performance. Grades are assigned by the faculty member responsible for each course.

A student earns quality points as well as semester hours if the grade in a course is not less than "D". The letter grades awarded by Averett, their interpretations, and the quality points per hour of credit are shown in the following table.

Letter Grade	Interpretation	Quality Points
A	Excellent Work	4
B	Good/Above Average Work	3
C	Average/Satisfactory Work	2
D	Passing/Below Average Work	1
F	Failure/Unsatisfactory Work	0
I	Incomplete	-
P	Pass (not counted in cumulative average)	-
@R	Course must be repeated	-
W	Withdrawal	-
	(extenuating circumstances)	
*WP	Withdrawal Passing	-
*WF	Withdrawal Failing (counted in cumulative average)	0
NC	No credit or Audit	-
NP	Not Passing (not counted in cumulative average)	-
X	No Grade Reported	-
@A, @B, or @C	Passing grade for ENG100 or MTH100	-

\*To receive a withdrawal grade (WP or WF), the student must officially withdraw from the University or drop the course. Courses with the grade WP are not calculated as hours attempted and do not affect the cumulative grade point average. Courses for which the grade WF is recorded are included in hours attempted and receive no quality points; thus, they affect the GPA in the same manner as a grade of F. See page 45 of this catalog for information concerning withdrawing from a course.

The grade of Incomplete (I) may be given to a student who is unable to complete scheduled course requirements. It is a privilege that may be granted by the instructor under *extraordinary* circumstances and may be awarded *only when the student has completed a significant portion of the coursework and has made specific arrangements with the instructor for the completion of the work*. If the student has not completed the course work by the end of the agreed upon time period, the grade will be changed to and F. The maximum amount of time that the instructor may allow for completion is until the last day of classes the following semester. Emergency extensions may be considered with the approval of the faculty member and the Dean of Arts and Sciences.

The **grade point average** (GPA) of a student's academic work is determined by means of quality points. The grade point average is calculated by dividing the total number of quality points earned by the total number of GPA credit hours. (GPA credits are attempted credits exclusive of those for which a grade of P or WP is recorded.)

## Grade Appeal

In the absence of compelling reasons, such as error or bad faith, the grade determined by the instructor of record is to be considered final. A student who believes an appropriate grade has not been

assigned should follow the procedures described below to appeal the grade.

1. Discuss the matter with the instructor involved.
2. If the student does not receive satisfaction in dealing with the instructor or feels too uncomfortable in dealing with the instructor directly, he/she should discuss the issue with the department chair.
3. If, after consulting with the chair, the student still feels that he/she has been dealt with unsatisfactorily or inequitably, he/she may submit a written appeal to the Dean of Arts and Sciences. **The written appeal must be submitted no later than 30 days into the semester following the receipt of the grade in question. Grade appeals from the spring or summer terms must be initiated by 30 days into the fall semester.**
4. At his/her discretion, the Dean may establish a review committee to study the issue and make recommendations for action, or the Dean may rule on the issue without such advice.
5. If the Dean decides to rule on the issue without benefit of committee, the investigation and resolution shall take place within 30 days after the written complaint has been received. The student will be notified of the Dean's decision in writing.
6. If the Dean decides to establish a review committee, he/she shall appoint three faculty members who have not taught the student and who are not members of the same department as the faculty member who issued the grade in question. The committee will investigate the matter and notify the student in writing of the decision within 30 days after the complaint is forwarded to the committee.
7. The student, instructor, department chairperson, and committee (if appropriate) shall be instructed that all information and procedures regarding the investigation of the appeal shall be kept confidential.
8. The written appeal by the student, and all information regarding the investigation and resolution of the appeal shall be maintained in the Office of the Dean of Arts and Sciences for five years following the incident.

This procedure will be followed for grade appeals initiated by both undergraduate and graduate students. The Dean of Graduate and Professional Programs will handle appeals requested by students in the Graduate and Professional Studies Program.

## **Academic Honors**

In an effort to reinforce its commitment to the intellectual development of students, Averett recognizes those students whose academic performance has been outstanding. These recognitions are described below.

## I. Honors Lists

At the conclusion of each regular semester, the University recognizes students who have demonstrated academic excellence by publishing their names on one of two honor rolls. To be included on one of the honor rolls a student must have completed at least 12 semester hours of course work for which quality points are awarded and have achieved at least the minimum grade point average listed below:

President's List	4.00
Dean's List	3.40

## II. Honors at Graduation

To be eligible for Latin honors at graduation, a student must have completed at least 33 semester hours at Averett for which quality points are earned and have the appropriate cumulative grade point average on work taken at Averett. In addition, all prior academic work of students transferring from another institution will be considered in computing the final grade point average, but no overall average may exceed the one earned by a student at Averett.

Below are the minimum cumulative grade point averages which must be earned for Latin honors.

<b>Summa cum laude</b>	- a grade point average of 3.80
<b>Magna cum laude</b>	- a grade point average of 3.60
<b>Cum laude</b>	- a grade point average of 3.40

## III. Awards for Honors Students

**Averett University Outstanding Religion Major Award** is presented each year at Honors Convocation. This award was established by Mr. and Mrs. Bernard Swann.

The **Beazley Scholar Scholarship** is awarded to a junior in the upper 10 percent of his class who has taken at least 30 hours at Averett. Selection is made by the Scholarship Committee. This scholarship was established at each of the seven member institutions of the Virginia College Fund to recognize outstanding students. This scholarship was made possible through a grant from the Beazley Foundation Inc. of Portsmouth, Virginia.

The **Yvonne Stewart Kelly Scholars** are juniors and seniors selected by the University's Scholarship Committee in recognition of outstanding academic achievement. Scholars are named annually at the Fall Convocation. Funds are supplied by the Yvonne Stewart Kelly Unitrust Fund for Scholarships at Averett University which is held by the Virginia Baptist Foundation.

The **Conwell Anderson Foreign Student Book Award** is presented annually at the Fall Convocation to the upper-class international student with the highest grade point average. Preference is given to seniors.

The **Alexander B. Carrington, Jr. Scholarship – Honors Program** was established by The Carrington Charitable Trust. This scholarship is to be awarded to a full-time undergraduate student(s) in the Honors Program to offset educational costs with an emphasis on pre-approved off-campus programs, including study abroad.

The **Elizabeth and James Bustard Distinguished Award** was established at Averett under the provisions of a trust created by the will of Elizabeth B. Bustard. This award is to be made at commencement to one or more graduating seniors selected by the faculty and Board of Trustees, who excel in high ideals of living, in spiritual qualities and in generous service to others, for use in graduate study. Contact the Office of the Dean of Arts and Sciences for information about this scholarship.

The **Mary C. Fugate Scholarship**, established and endowed by Averett University alumnae, is awarded each year to a young woman who best demonstrates those ideals exemplary of the life of former Averett Dean, Mary C. Fugate, which include academic achievement and service to church and society. The recipient is selected by the Scholarship Committee from nominations submitted by the Averett faculty.

The **Virginia Collegium Scholar Award** recognizes outstanding academic performance of students enrolled in the Averett Honors Program. This fund was made possible through gifts to the Virginia College Fund of which Averett University is a member institution.

## **HONOR SOCIETIES**

### **I. Alpha Chi**

Alpha Chi is a national coeducational society whose purpose is to produce academic excellence and exemplary character among college students and to honor those achieving such distinction. The Virginia Beta Chapter of Alpha Chi was established at Averett in the spring of 1973. The chapter seeks to stimulate a spirit of sound scholarship and devotion to truth in an atmosphere free of intellectual narrowness and personal discrimination. The faculty elects to membership junior and senior candidates of good character who meet the following qualifications:

1. Students must have completed at least 30 semester hours of academic work at Averett University.
2. Juniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.50 and be in the top 5 percent of their class.
3. Seniors must have attained a cumulative grade point average of 3.40 and be in the top 10 percent of their class.

The total combined grade point average is considered (grade point average at Averett University combined with the grade point average on all previous college work); however, the total combined grade point average may not be above the grade point average earned at Averett University.

### **II. Alpha Kappa Delta**

Alpha Kappa Delta is an international honor society based on superior academic achievement in sociology. Membership is by invitation. The purpose of the society is to promote an interest in the study of sociology, in research of social problems and in other intellectual activities that will lead to improvement in the human condition.

### **III. Beta Beta Beta**

Beta Beta Beta is an honor society for students who have superior academic achievement in biology. The society aims to cultivate a keen interest in the natural sciences, to stimulate an appreciation for biological research, and to promote scholarship.

### **IV. Alpha Psi Omega**

Alpha Psi Omega is a national college dramatic fraternity, membership in which is granted to advanced students in speech and dramatics.

## V. Sigma Lambda Epsilon

Sigma Lambda Epsilon is an honor society for students involved in the field of education. Selection for membership is based on outstanding performance both in and out of the classroom. It is designed to recognize accomplishments and provide professional growth for its members.

## ACADEMIC WARNING, PROBATION AND SUSPENSION

In order to meet degree requirements, a student must attain a grade point average of 2.00 or C average. The grade point average is determined by dividing the total quality points earned at Averett University by the number of GPA credits. The University maintains a graded policy on academic probation in order to indicate to students at different levels of their work that, unless significant improvement occurs, they will not be able to satisfy graduation requirements. The college determines a student's academic standing as indicated in the following table.

### Minimum Standards for Continuance

<b>Attempted Hours or Total Hours* (whichever is larger)</b>	<b>Academic Warning</b>	<b>Academic Probation</b>	<b>Considered for Academic Suspension</b>
<b>0-15</b>	<b>1.60 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.00 – 1.59</b>	<b>Less than 1.00</b>
<b>16-30</b>	<b>1.80 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.40 – 1.79</b>	<b>Less than 1.40</b>
<b>31-59</b>	<b>1.90 – 1.99</b>	<b>1.60 – 1.89</b>	<b>Less than 1.60</b>
<b>60- 123+</b>	<b>---</b>	<b>---</b>	<b>Less than 2.00</b>

\*Includes hours transferred to Averett University

The Academic Policies Council will review the record of any full-time student who does not pass more than 6 semester hours in a regular semester.

### Academic Warning

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will receive a letter from the Dean of Arts and Sciences regarding Academic Warning. Academic Warning means that the student's grade point average is below 2.0, but the deficiency is not severe enough to warrant Academic Probation. A notation is not placed on the student's permanent record for Academic Warning.

### Academic Probation

Any student whose cumulative grade point average at the end of any given semester falls within the stipulated range will be placed on Academic Probation and will receive a letter from the Dean of Arts and Sciences. A notation stating Academic Probation will be placed on the student's permanent record.

Any student on academic probation may enroll in no more than 13 semester hours in a regular semester (fall or spring) and may be required to participate in an intervention program. Students on Academic Probation may not participate in intercollegiate athletics, drama productions, or serve as an officer in university-recognized student organizations. Only those events which are components of credit courses or which are requirements for majors as noted in the catalog may be exempt.

## **Considered for Academic Suspension**

A student who fails to meet the minimum standards for continuance will be considered for Academic Suspension by the Academic Policies Council. If the Council imposes suspension, the Dean of Arts and Sciences will notify the student of the decision. A notation will appear on the student's permanent record.

Any student who is considered for academic suspension but is continued is governed by the same requirements and/or restrictions described under Academic Probation.

A student who earns at least a 2.30 semester grade point average after completing all attempted coursework for which he or she is registered at the end of the semester shall not be subject to suspension.

## **Suspension**

Decisions regarding academic suspension are made by the Academic Policies Council at the end of each full semester (fall and spring). Suspension begins immediately upon the vote of the Council. (Students enrolled in Summer Session I when they are suspended may complete that course, but the outcome of the course will not affect their suspension. Students who received [an] Incomplete[s] may finish the work in that [those] course[s], but the outcome of that work will not affect their suspension.) Students who have been suspended may not take courses at Averett for at least one regular semester and one summer. Therefore, a student suspended at the end of the fall semester may not be considered for readmission until the following fall, and a student suspended at the end of the spring semester may not be considered for readmission until the following spring. Suspensions may be appealed to the Academic Policies Council and the Dean of Arts and Sciences. **Averett will not accept transfer credits for courses taken while a student is on academic suspension from Averett University.**

## **Probation and Suspension Policy for Transfer Students**

Probation and suspension standards for transfer students will be based upon the sum of their transfer credits plus the hours attempted at Averett. The grade point average is based only on credit hours attempted and quality points earned at Averett University. **Course work completed at another college may not be used to improve the grade point average at Averett.**

## **Readmission of Students on Academic Suspension**

After one semester of suspension, a student may apply to the University for readmission. This request should be made in writing to the Academic Policies Council in care of the Dean of Arts and Sciences and should include a rationale for being considered for readmission. This letter should reach the University at least six weeks prior to the date sought for readmission. Before making a final decision, the Council may request a personal interview with the student. It should be noted that readmission is neither automatic nor certain. If the student is granted readmission, he/she will be governed by the regulations and degree requirements of the catalog that is current at the time of readmission. If a student is suspended for a second time for academic reasons, he/she will be academically ineligible to return to Averett.

## **Academic Renewal**

Academic renewal is the concept that a student may be relieved from some of the effects of past academic failures. The renewal process is designed to allow the individual to renew confidence and hope regarding his or her academic performance. Averett University offers two areas of academic renewal.



**I. Course Repeat Option.** A student may repeat a maximum of five courses, substituting the new grade and canceling the previous hours attempted. The student must accept the grade on the repeated course even if the grade is lower than the prior grade. After repeating five courses, no other course may be repeated unless the student earned a grade of F in a course required for his or her degree. In that case, the course may be repeated, but the previous grade and hours attempted will not be cancelled. Courses from other institutions will not be counted as repeats for courses at Averett.

**II. Academic Forgiveness.** A student may apply to the Academic Policies Council to have the **entire past post-secondary record** forgiven (or the record prior to an agreed upon date). The record of such courses remains a part of the student's transcript whether courses were taken at Averett University or at another institution. However, the current Averett permanent record will carry the notation that prior courses have been forgiven. Courses completed during the period of time for which forgiveness is granted (regardless of grade) may not be used to fulfill any academic requirements nor will they be computed in the student's grade point average for graduation or for consideration for honors.

The following guidelines govern this policy.

1. Five years must have elapsed since the most recent work to be disregarded was completed.
2. The student must apply in writing for forgiveness stating the point in the prior record beyond which forgiveness is sought.
3. An application will not be considered until a student has completed the equivalent of one semester of course work at Averett University with a 2.50 GPA on a cumulative total of at least twelve semester hours of credit.
4. A student must have selected a major and should submit a letter of support from the chair of the major department.
5. The student's transcript will indicate that the student has been granted academic forgiveness for all academic work undertaken prior to the effective time for forgiveness.
6. The student will be allowed only one academic forgiveness. Should a student who has been granted academic forgiveness reach the point of requiring consideration for suspension, the student shall be suspended and it shall be a final suspension.
7. The student will be allowed to use Course Repeat Options to improve the GPA.
8. All regular academic requirements must be met by the student for graduation.

## **Withdrawal and Leave of Absence**

### **Withdrawal**

Students may request to withdraw from the University at any time during the semester. Such a request should be made through the Office of Student Development.

Students withdrawing during the semester with no documented extenuating circumstances will have grades of WP or WF posted to their records based on grades assigned by the faculty. In addition, faculty will verify the student's last date of class attendance and it will be recorded in the Registrar's Office.

Students withdrawing during the semester for documented medical reasons may have grades of W posted to their records. The Office of Student Development will review and verify submitted documentation to determine if a medical withdrawal is warranted. In addition, the Office of Student Development will verify the student's last date of class attendance and it will be recorded in the Registrar's Office. Students withdrawing due to extenuating circumstances (e.g., documented medical

reasons) may request to remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett. All other students must complete requirements in the catalog that is current when they re-enter Averett.

**All** students returning after a withdrawal **must** complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

### **Leave of Absence**

Students may apply for a leave of absence through the Office of Student Development. A leave of absence may only be granted **before** the beginning of the semester.

A leave of absence may be granted for up to one calendar year.

A leave of absence is for a complete semester, meaning that a student cannot be granted a leave for a specified semester and then return to take classes within that semester.

A leave of absence will not be granted to students suspended, being considered for suspension, or on probation.

A student who has been approved for a leave of absence may remain under the catalog requirements in effect when they first entered Averett.

All students returning after a leave of absence **must** complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

### **Readmission Process**

All students who have withdrawn or been granted a leave of absence must complete an application for readmission through the Registrar's Office.

Students who left in good standing, or with an academic status of "warning" **may** be automatically readmitted and allowed to register for classes.

Students whose academic status was "probation," "considered for suspension," or "suspension" will have their application submitted to the Academic Policies Council for review. The Council will make a readmission decision before students are allowed to register for classes.

---

---

# GENERAL REGULATIONS

---

---

## Classification of Students

Students at Averett University are classified academically as freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors, based on the number of semester hours earned (see table). They are also classified as full-time or part-time. Full-time students are those who are registered for at least 12 hours in a regular semester or 6 hours in a summer session. Students are also classified as either degree-seeking or special students.

Academic Classification	Semester Hours Earned
Freshman	0-29
Sophomore	30-59
Junior	60-89
Senior	90 or more

## Transfer Credits

### I. Transfer Students

Students who wish to transfer to Averett from another college must have transcripts of **all** previous college work sent to the Averett University Admissions Office. In order to receive transfer credit for courses completed before matriculating at Averett, a final, official transcript should be received by the end of the first semester of enrollment at Averett. Courses will not be transferred to Averett University while a student is on academic suspension at a previous college.

Students may not enroll at Averett University during the term(s) in which they are on academic suspension at another college.

Averett University will transfer courses for which a grade of C or higher was received, provided such courses are applicable to the Averett University curriculum and the other college is accredited by a regional accrediting agency. For those students who have earned the associate's degree, Averett will accept in transfer all courses which were credited by the transferring institution toward the student's degree.

The one exception to this policy is that Averett does not transfer grades of D in College Composition I or II (or their equivalents). Any student who holds an associate's degree with a D in College Composition I and/or II (or their equivalents) must take ENG 111 and/or ENG 112 at Averett.

Students who transfer from a two-year college must earn 60 hours at a four-year college in order to receive a baccalaureate degree. Thus, if a student transfers 63 hours to Averett from a two-year college, he/she must complete the remainder of his/her work at a four-year college.

Transfer courses in the student's intended major are subject to the approval of the department. If the transfer student selects a minor, he/she must complete a minimum of 6 semester hours in the minor field at Averett.

A student's grade point average for graduation requirements is based only on work taken at Averett University. When computing grade point averages for determination of honors for graduation or membership in Alpha Chi, grades on all college work are included.

## **II. Transfer of Credit from Other Institutions (after enrolling at Averett)**

After matriculation at Averett, all students who wish to receive credit for courses taken at another accredited institution must have written approval granted **in advance** by the Associate Dean/Registrar. The written approval must be in the student's file in the Registrar's Office before credit will be given for those courses. Students must earn a grade of C or better in order to receive transfer credit for any course taken at another institution. Grades on courses taken at another institution will not be calculated into the student's grade point average at Averett. Thus, a course taken elsewhere will neither raise nor lower the student's grade point average. Transfer credit may **not** be used to replace any grade previously earned at Averett.

When the student has earned 90 hours, approval for work to be transferred from another institution will not be granted. The last 33 hours must be taken at Averett.

## **Academic Advising**

Upon acceptance to Averett, a student is assigned an academic advisor by the Dean of Arts and Sciences. If he or she has decided upon a major, a member of the faculty of that department will advise the student. If she or he has not decided upon a major, an advisor will be assigned who can provide general academic guidance.

The primary role of the academic advisor is to **guide and assist** the student in planning the program of study in order to meet requirements for graduation. Before registering for classes each semester, the student must make an appointment with his/her advisor to plan the class schedule. **Nevertheless, it is the student's responsibility to be familiar with and to fulfill all requirements for graduation.**

## **Registration**

Registration for classes is held several times during the year. The exact dates and deadlines are published with the class schedules each semester. Students are responsible for knowing and adhering to the published dates and deadlines. A student will not be permitted to register for a term after the add/drop period has ended.

## **Course Changes**

### **1. Adding a Course**

Following registration a student may add courses until the last day to add classes. The exact date of the last day to add classes is posted on the IQ Web each semester. The student's academic advisor must approve the student's registration in IQ Web before it becomes part of their schedule. Students may add classes through IQ Web but must have an advisor sign a drop form for any courses they decide to drop. The form must then be processed through the Registrar's Office.

### **2. Withdrawing From a Course**

Following registration a student may drop a course during the first day of fall or spring semester without a tuition penalty. Following that date, the student will lose a percentage of tuition as outlined on page 235 of this catalog. Students withdrawing from courses in the summer terms must do so before the start of classes in order to receive a full refund.

If a student drops a course during the drop/add period (the first week of the fall or spring semester or the first three days of a summer session), the course will not appear on the student's permanent record. After the drop/add period, a student may withdraw from a class until the last day of classes. If a student withdraws after the drop/add period, but within the first four weeks of the semester (first three days in a summer session), the student will receive a grade of W. After the first four weeks,

the instructor will assign a grade of WP if the student is passing the course (which will not affect the GPA), or WF if the student is failing the course. A WF will be averaged into the GPA as an F. The academic advisor will be notified of this action. If extenuating circumstances exist that necessitate a student's withdrawing from school, the withdrawal must be initiated with the Dean of Students.

A student who stops attending class and does not officially withdraw from the course according to the guidelines described above will receive a grade of F in the course. Students are responsible for making sure the appropriate paperwork is turned in to the Registrar's Office.

### **Pass/Fail Option**

Any student may take as many as five courses on a Pass/Fail basis. These courses must be used as free electives. Courses used to satisfy the requirements for General Education, teacher licensure, the major, or the minor may not be taken on a Pass/Fail basis. A student who elects to take a course Pass/Fail must indicate that choice in the Registrar's Office no later than the end of the first week of classes in the fall or spring semester and no later than the third day of a summer session. A student may not revoke the Pass/Fail option after the above-named deadlines.

In computation of grade point averages, courses taken on Pass/Fail are disregarded so that one's grade point average cannot be affected by the mark received on these courses.

### **Course Load**

The normal academic load in the fall or spring semester is 15 to 18 semester hours. A student must enroll for at least 12 semester hours to qualify as a full-time student. Course loads in excess of 18 semester hours must be approved by the Dean of Arts and Sciences or the Registrar. A maximum academic load for a four-week summer session is 6 semester hours. Students who are on academic probation are limited to a maximum of 13 semester hours during the fall or spring semester and to 4 semester hours during the summer terms.

### **Summer Sessions**

Averett offers several summer sessions, beginning in May and continuing through July. The normal course load for a student is 3-6 semester hours during each of the sessions.

For more information on the summer sessions, contact the Dean of Arts and Sciences or the Registrar.

### **Credit by Non-Traditional Means**

Averett University allows students to gain academic credit by following a number of avenues other than the traditional college class experience.

**CLEP**--College credit may be earned through both the general examinations and the subject examinations of the College Level Examination Program. The five general examinations cover the areas of English composition, mathematics, natural sciences, history, and humanities.

The five general examinations, the Averett equivalent course, the number of semester hours awarded and the acceptable scores are listed below. Averett University follows the American Council on Education guidelines in awarding credit for the CLEP examinations.

<b>General Examination</b>	<b>Averett Equivalent</b>	<b>Hours</b>	<b>Acceptable Score</b>
English Composition	English 111* (with essay)	3	50
Humanities	Fine Arts	6	50
Mathematics	Math 103	3	50
Natural Sciences	Natural Sciences**	6	50
Social Studies & History	His. 101 & 102	6	50

Each subject examination is equal to 3 or 6 hours credit (depending on whether the material is designed to measure a one-course or a two-course sequence). In the subject examinations, credit is awarded only in those areas applicable to the Averett University curriculum.

Any student who completes a degree at Averett must complete the last 33 semester hours of classwork at this institution, which means that 90 semester hours may be accumulated through credit by examination, CLEP, or transfer.

After matriculating at Averett, the student will pay one-third the prevailing tuition rate for any credit through CLEP. The CLEP examinations are administered through the Office of Financial Aid. Contact that office for more information. (Note: these policies do not apply to CLEP taken before matriculation.)

\*The English Department requires the Multiple Choice **with Essay** Test. The CLEP subject exam, College Composition, will also be accepted for credit for English 111 or the subject exam, Freshman English, for credit for English 111 & 112. The essays for these English tests must be sent to Averett University for evaluation in order for credit to be awarded.

\*\*Will satisfy a Natural Science general education requirement.

**Credit by Examination**--For credit by examination, other than CLEP or Advanced Placement Tests, the student must consult the individual department. If the department approves an examination, it will design challenge examinations related to the specific course requested. The examination must be approved by every member of the department. For credit by examination, a \$25 non-refundable, administrative fee will be assessed. If credit is awarded, the student will pay one-half the prevailing tuition rate. The administrative fee will be deducted from the tuition charge.

**Military Credit**--Averett may grant credit for military service, provided the term served is a minimum of one year. Credit is based on the recommendations of the American Council on Education Guides. This credit is evaluated on the basis of senior college credit.

**Non-Collegiate Learning Experience**--Averett University may grant credit for course work taken under the auspices of certain businesses and industries provided those courses are recommended for credit by the American Council on Education. Students may wish to develop a portfolio demonstrating their prior learning to be evaluated to determine if credit will be granted.

## **Transcripts**

The University maintains a permanent academic record on each student who enters Averett, a certified copy of which is available upon written request to the Registrar's Office. There is no fee for the issuance of a transcript.

Neither grade reports nor transcripts will be issued to students until all charges have been paid, including tuition, library fines, and bookstore charges.

## **Parental Access to Student Records**

Averett University assumes all traditional undergraduate students to be dependent on their parents; therefore, parents have access to student grades, schedules, transcripts, housing records, judicial records, and directory information upon their written request including a signature.

A student who wishes to be treated as an independent must apply for independent status by completing and filing the appropriate form with the Registrar's Office. Upon submission of the completed form, the student's grades and records will be available only to him/her.

Parents of students who have declared themselves as independent may gain access to student records and grades only by demonstrating to the University that the student is considered a dependent under the IRS code.

All graduate and non-traditional students will be treated as independent. Non-traditional students are students 23 years of age or older.

## **Non-traditional Education**

Averett attempts to create a learning environment accessible to all citizens who feel they can benefit by attending the University. This environment is created by offering courses to students of all ages, on campus and off campus, using a variety of delivery systems.

### **I. Graduate and Professional Studies (GPS)**

This nontraditional program, designed for working adults, offers courses of study leading to the Associate of Science in Business, the Bachelor of Business Administration and the Master of Business Administration degrees. Courses are offered at sites throughout the Commonwealth of Virginia, including Northern Virginia, Richmond, Tidewater and Southern Virginia, and in North Carolina. These programs are described in detail in a separate catalog. Information about these programs is available from the office of the Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies.

### **II. Individually Developed Education for Adult Learners (IDEAL)**

The IDEAL Program permits adult students who cannot enroll in a structured education curriculum the opportunity to develop, with assistance from an academic advisor, a program tailored to their own schedules and backgrounds. Students in this program may earn credits through attendance in regular classes, through distance education programs from accredited institutions, or through completion of Averett University independent study courses.

Independent study courses involve a one-on-one academic experience with a faculty member. Students communicate directly with their faculty through a variety of modes, which may include fax, phone, e-mail, voice mail, audio and videotapes, and print media. Course requirements are completed on an individual basis in accordance with the student's schedule.

#### **PROGRAMS**

IDEAL offers four major curriculum areas: Criminal Justice, Sociology, Physical Education: Sport Management, and the Bachelor of Applied Science degree. Other majors may be arranged based on availability of courses and the flexibility of the student's schedule.

#### **REQUIREMENTS FOR GRADUATION**

The basic requirements for an undergraduate degree from Averett University are a minimum of 123 semester hours of credit with at least a 2.00 grade point average on all work attempted as well as on courses to complete the major. Other specific requirements are listed below:

Students must satisfactorily complete all Core General Education requirements.

Students must achieve satisfactory completion of a specified major area of study.

Students must satisfy competencies in writing, oral communication, technology, and knowledge of other cultures.

At least 33 hours of academic work must be taken at Averett University.

Transfer students must satisfactorily complete a minimum of 12 semester hours in the major field at Averett University.

Students who are first admitted to Averett University as special students must earn a minimum of 30 semester hours of credit after obtaining degree-seeking status.

Students must file an application for graduation with the Registrar's Office by the designated date in the semester in which graduation is planned. Appropriate forms are available during registration for fall semester classes, or a student may apply directly to the Registrar's Office.

Students must have completed all requirements for graduation in order to participate in commencement exercises.

Students must have met all financial obligations to the University in order to participate in graduation. All tuition, fees, fines, bookstore charges and other bills must be paid in full prior to participating in graduation.

## STUDENT SERVICES

Averett University recognizes the importance of counseling and professional assistance for student success. For students enrolled in the IDEAL Program, this is of particular importance. Students are assigned an advisor who helps them develop the degree program. This advisor acts as the primary point of contact for the student when dealing with non-academic issues and course enrollment.

## COST

See page 232 for a list of tuition and fees for the IDEAL Program.

## SCHOLARSHIP

In recognition of the service that the military provides to this nation, Averett University offers a special scholarship for all military members (active or reserve), Department of Defense civilian employees, state National Guard employees, and their family members. This scholarship is available for all degree programs statewide and provides a 25% tuition reduction for students enrolled on a full-time basis.

## TUITION ASSISTANCE

Averett University will accept tuition assistance from any of the military services. For IDEAL independent study courses, this includes tuition assistance/reimbursement available through DANTES.

## SOC MEMBERSHIP

As a member of Servicemember Opportunity Colleges, Averett University has several policies that support military members. These include:

Liberal Credit Transfer from other colleges and universities

Acceptance of standardized examinations

\*College Level Exam Program

\*DANTES Subject Standardized Tests

\*Regents College Exams

## CREDIT TRANSFER

Averett University will accept in transfer coursework and credit from most accredited sources.

Course credit is added to the student's transcript upon enrollment in a degree program. Military credit is accepted from:

Military Training Courses

Occupational Specialty

Service College

## LOCATIONS

The IDEAL Program is designed to be fully portable. Courses can be completed wherever and whenever the student chooses. IDEAL students may also participate in courses offered at more than 60 sites throughout Virginia, North Carolina, and the District of Columbia. Approval of specific courses must be obtained from your advisor prior to enrollment. For information concerning the IDEAL Program, contact the Director of the IDEAL Program.



---

---

# DEGREE PROGRAMS AND COURSES

---

---

## Degree Requirements

Listed in this section are the requirements for each major offered at Averett. Any adjustment in these requirements must be approved by the Department Chair and the Dean of Arts and Sciences. The requirements described here are in addition to the General Education requirements listed on page 22 of this catalog. A student may, however, meet some of the General Education requirements automatically through the completion of the selected area of concentration.

Some programs have special admission requirements. Admission to the University does not guarantee admission to any specific degree program.

## Courses

Course numbers indicate the general level at which the course is taught. Courses at the 300- and 400-levels are designed primarily for juniors and seniors. Credit for courses appears in the parentheses and is indicated in semester hours.

A comma between course numbers means that the first course is a prerequisite to the second but that credit may be received for the first semester without taking the second semester.

Generally, the credit indicates the number of hours the class meets each week. For a three semester hour course, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday classes meet for 55 minutes each session; Tuesday and Thursday classes meet 1 hour and 25 minutes each session.

The University reserves the right to add courses or to omit courses as necessary. The official schedule of classes is posted on the university website ([www.averett.edu](http://www.averett.edu)) prior to the beginning of each semester.

## Special Studies, Independent Studies, and Tutorials

From time to time **special courses** are offered which make available to students areas of study not included in the regular course offerings. The department which offers the course gives it a title which is used in the official schedule of classes and on student records. Because content will vary, special studies courses may be repeated for credit.

199 and 299                      Special Studies                      (1-3)  
Open to freshmen, sophomores, juniors, and seniors.

399 and 499                      Special Studies                      (1-3)  
Open to juniors and seniors.

### Independent Study (Non-catalog Courses)

**Independent study** courses (numbered 490) are individually designed learning experiences normally open only to juniors and seniors. The independent study allows students to explore academic interests **not** provided by the existing curriculum. The student undertaking an independent study is guided and evaluated by a qualified member of the faculty.

The plan for an independent study project must be completed with the instructor and academic advisor and approved by the Dean of Arts and Sciences prior to registration. Students must turn in the completed independent study form with the registration form before their registration will be processed. Forms for submitting independent studies are available in the Registrar's Office.

### Tutorials (Independent Study for Catalog Courses)

**Tutorials** are courses which are listed in the catalog but are taken on a tutorial or independent basis. Students may request a tutorial during a semester in which the course is not offered **if** the course is required for graduation and **if** it will not be offered again before the student graduates. The student's registration should show the catalog number and title with a section designation of "I". Prior permission of the Associate Dean of Arts and Sciences is required in order to register for a catalog course on a tutorial or independent basis. **Internships** may be taken on a tutorial or independent basis with approval from the advisor and instructor if the student has a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 or better.

---

---

# ACCOUNTING

---

---

Mr. Vincent Kania  
Mr. Brian Turner  
Thomas Vick, J.D. *Chair*

Averett's accounting curriculum meets the educational requirements of the Virginia Board of Accountancy. Averett graduates are provided a thorough background in the concepts and principles of accounting along with specialized studies in taxation, auditing, and systems analysis. The Averett graduate is prepared for careers in business, public accounting, government and education.

On July 1, 2006, Virginia will adopted the 150-semester hour requirement to take the CPA (Certified Public Accountant) examination. The Bachelor of Science degree in accounting from Averett enables the student to meet eligibility standards to sit for the CPA exam. For students who do not wish to pursue the CPA designation, the major in Business Administration with a concentration in accounting provides many of the same career opportunities.

Students with a major in Accounting must achieve a 2.00 GPA for all courses in the major. The 2.00 may not include more than two grades of D. All students majoring in Accounting must satisfactorily complete Mathematics 171, its equivalent, or a higher numbered math course.

## Requirements for a Major in Accounting

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

### Core requirements

	Semester Hours
CSS113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
ECO201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ECO202, Principles of Macroeconomics .....	3
BSA206, Business Communications.....	3
BSA221, Principles of Accounting I.....	3
BSA222, Principles of Accounting II.....	3
BSA305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA370, Principles of Finance .....	3
BSA434, Business Law .....	3
	<u>33</u>
	Total Core

### Accounting and Finance courses

	Semester Hours
BSA320, Taxation of Individuals.....	3
BSA325, Managerial and Cost Accounting .....	3
BSA343, Intermediate Accounting I.....	3
BSA344, Intermediate Accounting II.....	3
BSA345, Intermediate Accounting III .....	3
BSA372, Money and Banking.....	3
BSA373, International Financial Management .....	3
BSA416, Taxation of Corporations & Other Business Entities.....	3

BSA400, Accounting Information Systems .....	3
BSA420, Auditing .....	3
BSA421, Governmental and Not-for-Profit Accounting .....	3
BSA422, Advanced Accounting .....	3
BSA427, Auditing II .....	3
Accounting elective or internship.....	3
PHL210, Ethics .....	<u>3</u>
Total	45

## Courses of Instruction

- 206 Business Communications (3)**  
This course is designed to improve written and oral communication skills within the context of the business environment. Students will learn to prepare various business letters, reports, and other forms of written communication. Decision-making and problem-solving techniques are emphasized through an introduction to case study methods. Students are introduced to electronic presentation media and encouraged to use other technological means to communicate with the professor and with each other. Prerequisite: CSS 113 or permission of instructor.
- 221, 222 Principles of Accounting I, II (3,3)**  
A study of basic accounting theories and procedures for dealing with activities of sole proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations.
- 305 Principles of Management (3)**  
An introduction to the art and science of management and managerial functions. The subject of management is approached from a multidimensional viewpoint in relation to the concepts, principles, policies, and practices necessary to accomplish managerial tasks. The theory of management, the application of theory to managerial situations, and the basic classification theory of the principles of management are emphasized. Prerequisite: BSA 206 and 221 and ENG 112.
- 310 Principles of Marketing (3)**  
An introductory course which analyzes marketing as a total concept involving a process of moving a product or service from the originator to the consumer. Prerequisites: BSA 206, 221 and ENG 112. Prerequisite or Corequisite: CSS 113.
- 320 Taxation of Individuals (3)**  
An analysis of the underlying principles of the federal income tax law from the viewpoint of the individual as well as the three major organizational forms of business firms, i.e., proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations. Prerequisite: BSA 221.
- 325 Managerial and Cost Accounting (3)**  
An analysis of cost systems, including job order, process, and standard costs and the preparation of financial statements for manufacturing firms. Prerequisite: BSA 222.
- 343 Intermediate Accounting I (3)**  
A presentation of the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements, and the proper uses that can be made of financial data. Prerequisite: BSA 221.
- 344 Intermediate Accounting II (3)**  
A continuation of the analysis of the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements, and the proper uses that can be made of financial data. Prerequisite: BSA 343.

- 345 Intermediate Accounting III (3)**  
A continuation of BSA 343 and BSA 344 with emphasis on special corporation accounting problems, accounting requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, international operations. Includes a review of historical and current accounting literature. Prerequisites: BSA 343, 344.
- 370 Principles of Finance (3)**  
This course is a basic study of managerial planning and control systems. Topics include: analysis of financial statements, risk and return, time value of money and valuation, capital budgeting, cost of capital, leverage, and dividend policy. Prerequisites: CSS 203, BSA 221 and 222.
- 372 Money and Banking (3)**  
The purpose of this course is to examine financial pricing, institutions, and markets. In addition, the roles of money and credit, monetary theory and monetary policy will be discussed in the context of domestic and global financial systems.
- 373 International Financial Management (3)**  
This course will examine the global issues of finance, monetary unions, exchanges, and banking. Basic theories and risks for the MNC's will be discussed, as well as global long-term and short-term asset-liability management.
- 400 Accounting Information Systems (3)**  
A study of the organization and use of accounting information systems. Emphasis is on the analysis and design of accounting systems in business entities. Course also enables the student to develop an understanding of the relationships between computer hardware and software. Prerequisites: Senior status and completion of CSS 113, BSA 325, 343.
- 416 Taxation of Corporations and Other Business Entities (3)**  
Introduction to corporations, partnerships and other business entities. Primary content includes formation, operation and liquidation of corporations, S corporations and partnerships. Also covers compliance and tax planning topics for corporations, partnerships and other entities.
- 420 Auditing (3)**  
A study of auditing theory and practice. The student will study auditing standards, procedures, rules of professional conduct, and related materials. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 421 Governmental and Not-for-Profit Accounting (3)**  
An examination of the accounting process peculiar to government agencies--the methods, systems, and procedures involved in appropriating funds from the general budget, encumbered funds, unencumbered funds, etc., and the preparation of financial statements of governmental units. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 422 Advanced Accounting (3)**  
An application of the fundamentals of accounting to complex situations ranging from partnership organization and operation, liquidation and joint ventures to consolidated financial statements, segment reporting, bankruptcy and corporate reorganization. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 425 Certified Public Accountant Problems (3)**  
A review of the general and specialized accounting problems and related fields which constitute the subject matter of the CPA examination; specifically, practical problems, auditing, business law, and accounting theory. Prerequisites: Senior status and permission of instructor.

**427 Auditing II (3)**

This course continues Auditing I by applying the concepts and procedures used in the audit process. This is accomplished by the writing of audit programs and reports and oral presentation of the programs and reports.

**429 Accounting Theory and Problems (3)**

A critical examination and analysis of accounting principles with emphasis on the determination of cost, income, valuation, and statement presentation. Prerequisites: Senior status and permission of instructor.

**434 Business Law (3)**

A study of the fundamentals of legal applications in the framework of business, laws of contracts, negotiable instruments, property, agency, and bankruptcy.

**449 Internship (1-12)**

An opportunity to integrate the knowledge and skills gained in the classroom with an actual work environment experience. For each credit hour earned, the student spends a minimum of 30 hours of approved work experience with a cooperating organization. Each student develops, in cooperation with his instructor and work-place supervisor, a learning contract for the work experience and for the academic project associated with this course. Available with permission of instructor and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average.

---

---

# AERONAUTICS (AV)

---

---

Charles Martell, B.S., M.A.  
Walter Penn III, B.A., J.D.  
Thomas Vick, B.S., J.D., *Chair*

## MAJOR IN AEROSPACE MANAGEMENT

The Department of Aeronautics prepares graduates who are academically, ethically, and professionally prepared to accept the relevant leadership challenges of the current and future aviation industry.

The Department of Aeronautics offers a highly challenging and rigorous undergraduate degree in the Bachelor of Arts (BA) and Bachelor of Science (BS) in Aerospace Management with fields of concentration in Flight Operations, Aviation Business, Aviation Technical Systems, and Aviation Maintenance Operations. The Program also offers a joint major in Aerospace Management and Criminal Justice. The Program includes at least 53 hours of general education courses to assure that a student is professionally well-rounded.

In addition, the Department of Aeronautics offers flight courses for academic credit to all interested Averett University students who are not on University or other academic disciplinary action, and meet departmental requirements and policies. The Flight Center offers training for the following Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) certificates: private, commercial and flight instructor pilot, as well as training for the FAA ratings for instrument, multi-engine, instrument instructor and multi-engine instructor. A student seeking an FAA certificate or rating through the Department of Aeronautics must successfully complete the courses pertinent to the desired certification at the Flight Center prior to graduation.

### Policies

Safety is a preeminent concern of the Department of Aeronautics and the Federal Aviation Administration. The FAA also specifically mandates high grade and attendance standards that must be met by students in all ground and flight courses. Aviation professionals also have the highest behavioral and medical standards in any industry. The Department of Aeronautics reflects its commitment to these high professional standards within the aviation industry. The department faculty and staff insist that all students conduct themselves in a responsible and professional manner.

All students are required to study and be well prepared prior to all academic and flight classes. Consequently, students must maintain a minimum annual grade point average in courses in the major. This departmental requirement is in addition to other University academic policies.

A first year student receiving a D, F or WF in one course in the major will be placed on departmental probation. A first year student receiving a second D, F, or WF in the major will not be permitted to continue to major in Aerospace Management. The student also may not enroll in other courses in the major.

Upperclass or transfer students may not receive any grades of D, F, or WF in courses in the major or the student will not be permitted to continue to major in Aerospace Management. The student also may not enroll in other courses in the major.

Any student who does not conform to these high expectations may be placed on probation or suspension, or be administratively withdrawn or dismissed from the major, if in the judgment of the Chair, such action is believed to be necessary.

## Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program

While in the Aerospace Management Program, students will be part of the Drug and Alcohol Prevention Program. As in the aerospace industry "no tolerance" environment, the department's goal is to use education and deterrence to assure a safe and secure training environment.

The program is similar to mandatory drug and alcohol testing conducted in the industry. All students enrolled in the Aerospace Management Program are subject to random or "for cause" drug testing during their enrollment. Additional drug and alcohol testing will be done for several reasons. Tests can be ordered as an initial screening, directed at an individual based on his/her behavior, speech, odor or other characteristics, inconclusive test results, or be done as a result of an aviation-related accident or incident. Any confirmed use of illegal drugs or chronic abuse of alcohol is cause for immediate suspension from any safety or security sensitive courses.

Drug, alcohol, and other legal convictions, or positive drug and alcohol test results, or results from certain judicial or University administrative actions are considered serious problems by the Federal government and the aviation industry. These can severely and adversely impact the student trying to obtain FAA certificates or a mandatory security background clearance in order to obtain professional employment in the aviation industry.

## Facilities

The Department of Aeronautics is located on the main campus and offers academic instruction and advising. The Flight Center is located at Danville Regional Airport, a short distance from campus. Students should be prepared to provide their own transportation to and from the Flight Center.

## Degree Requirements

Students enrolled in the Department of Aeronautics program must complete 123 credits as outlined in the appropriate curriculum prior to graduation. 60 credits must be completed at a senior institution with the last 33 credits from Averett University.

Deviation from the recommended program may be made only with a written request from the student and with the written approval of the appropriate departmental chair.

As part of the 123 credits, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements.

## Core Requirements for All Concentrations in Aerospace Management:

	Semester Hours
AV 102, Introduction to the Aerospace Industry .....	3
AV 202, Aerospace Safety .....	3
AV 244, Aerospace Regulatory Process .....	3
AV 316, Aerospace Transportation.....	3
AV 401, Airport Management .....	<u>3</u>
	Total - 15



### Concentration in Aviation Business

For the concentration in Aviation Business, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements in addition to 15 credits of Aerospace electives (selected from the following list and special courses) and the 30 credits in Business Administration listed below. This concentration requires 60 credits in Aerospace and Business Administration courses.

	Semester Hours
AV 216, National Airspace System .....	3
AV 265, Aerospace Accident Investigation .....	3
AV 275, General Aviation Management .....	3
AV 285, Aviation Security Operations .....	3
AV 311, Aerospace Law .....	3
AV 331, Airline Management .....	3
AV 365, Human Factors in the Aerospace Industry .....	3
AV 425, Airport Planning and Design .....	3
AV 472, Internship in the Aerospace Industry .....	1-12
AV 475, Aviation Management Topics .....	3
AV 480, Airline Business Strategy Simulation .....	3
	Total 15

Required Business Administration Courses:

	Semester Hours
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I .....	3
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA elective courses .....	6
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics .....	3
	Total 30

### Concentration in Flight Operations

Averett University flight training is conducted under the provisions of Federal Aviation Regulations Parts 141 and 61. All flight instructors have the appropriate FAA certificates and experience.

The student also is required to earn at least an FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with an Instrument rating. A student must further complete either Option A – Flight Instructor Certificate or Option B – Multi-Engine Rating. Qualified students enrolled in this concentration will also be able to select any or all of the other flight courses as electives.

All flight courses may begin and end at any time during the academic semester and may not coincide with the beginning and ending dates of the published semester schedule. Students who begin a flight course late in the semester should be prepared to complete that flight course during the next published semester.

Flight fees are in addition to the regular university tuition. The flight rates and charges are based on a reasonable number of hours required to meet the minimum hours contained in the specific FAA-approved flight training syllabus. Additional flight and ground training charges may be required for students not making satisfactory progress or due to other factors such as weather, illness, weight restriction, maintenance, selection of different training aircraft, etc. The costs for all additional flight and ground training are in addition to the regular flight course fees. Fees are assessed also for taking the FAA Knowledge and Practical tests.

### Transfer of Flight Training

The Department of Aeronautics welcomes transfer students from other colleges and universities, and every effort is made to transfer the maximum number of credits subject to Federal Aviation Regulations and University policies. It is the responsibility of the student to initiate a review process of

transfer flight training with the Chief Flight Instructor. Advanced standing for flight training may be granted only after the student is enrolled, and after the Chief Flight Instructor completes the evaluation process, which will include a logbook review and proficiency evaluation flights. Transfer students may receive college credit for previous flight and ground training at the discretion of the department chair.

Students enrolled in any flight courses should not expect to take any flight training for credit outside the Department of Aeronautics facilities after enrollment at Averett University.

**Medical Examinations**

Students seeking admission to flight training must be examined by an FAA-designated aviation medical examiner and have an FAA medical certificate prior to the start of flight training. The Department of Aeronautics strongly recommends that the student initially obtains an FAA Class I medical certificate to assure that the student meets the professional pilot medical standards prior to undertaking flight training. The FAA medical examinations should be done far enough in advance of entering Averett University to assure that all potential problems or questions are resolved.

**Non-Owners Aircraft Insurance Liability Coverage**

In order to assure adequate individual and family needs are met through insurance coverage, Averett University requires all flight students to acquire non-owners aircraft rental insurance after obtaining their FAA Private Pilot certificate.

**Flight Operations Requirements**

For the concentration in Flight Operations, the student is required to take the Aerospace core requirements in addition to 15 credits of flight courses and either Option A or Option B below.

	Semester Hours
AV 112, Private Pilot Ground School .....	3
AV 113, Private Pilot Flight I .....	1
AV 114, Private Pilot Flight II .....	1
AV 210, Instrument Ground School .....	3
AV 220, Instrument Flight I .....	1
AV 221, Instrument Flight II .....	1
AV 300, Commercial Ground School .....	3
AV 320, Commercial Flight I .....	1
AV 321, Commercial Flight II .....	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>15</b>

Available Options in the Flight Operations Concentration:

Option A:

AV 441, Flight Instructor Ground School .....	3
AV 440, Flight Instructor Flight .....	1
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum (P/F) .....	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>6</b>

Option B:

AV 443, Multi-Engine Ground School .....	1
AV 442, Multi-Engine Flight .....	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>

Option C:

AV 444, Instrument Flight Instructor Ground School .....	2
AV 445, Instrument Flight Instructor Flight .....	1
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum (P/NP) .....	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>5</b>

Option D:

AV 446, Multi-Engine Flight Instructor Flight .....	3
---	---

## Concentration in Aviation Technical Systems

This concentration is a response to the changing nature and growing demand within the aviation industry for technically oriented employees with a background in aeronautics, computer science, and mathematics. In addition, the concentration permits students to apply for advanced studies in engineering.

### Requirements for Aviation Technical Systems

For this concentration, students must complete core requirements in Aeronautics, Computer Science, and Mathematics. The Department of Aeronautics policies are applied to this concentration.

In addition to General Education requirements, students must complete:

	Semester hours
AV 102, Introduction to Aerospace Industry .....	3
AV 202, Aerospace Safety .....	3
AV 244, Aerospace Regulatory Process .....	3
AV 316, Aerospace Transportation.....	3
AV 401, Airport Management .....	3
AV elective 200 level or above .....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers & Application Software .....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212, Programming II <b>or</b>	
CSS 231, Programming in C++ <b>or</b>	
CSS 235, Programming in Java.....	4
CSS elective 200 level or above.....	3-4
MTH 201, Calculus I.....	3
MTH 202, Calculus II .....	3
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics .....	3
MTH 301, Calculus III.....	3
CSS or MTH electives 300-400 level.....	<u>9</u>
Total Concentration	53-54

## Concentration in Aviation Maintenance Operations

Prospective students must have advanced standing. Each student must have earned their FAA Airframe and Powerplant certificate or build upon completed technical training or education gained from other accredited post-secondary colleges or universities or military training elsewhere prior to being admitted to the Averett University Aeronautics Program. No other FAA certificates will be accepted for admission into this concentration. The maximum number of credits granted for the FAA A&P certificate earned only through work experience is 30 credits.

Averett University also will accept for advance standing students who have completed an accredited training program in Avionics. The maximum number of credits granted for the Avionics training is 30 credits.

Students seeking advanced standing must submit the appropriate FAA and other documentation to substantiate the certificates and all official transcripts of all previous high school and college courses completed at an accredited institution to the Averett University Admissions Office.

Students enrolled in the Aviation Maintenance Operations concentration must complete the required Aerospace core courses and an additional 15 credits in Aerospace or Business Administration electives.

60 credits must be completed at a senior institution with the last 33 credits from Averett University.

**Requirements for Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program:**

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
AV 102, Introduction to the Aerospace Industry .....	3
AV 112, Private Pilot Ground School.....	3
AV 113, Private Pilot Flight I.....	1
AV 114, Private Pilot Flight II.....	1
AV 202, Aerospace Safety.....	3
AV 210, Instrument Ground School.....	3
AV 220, Instrument Flight I.....	1
AV 221, Instrument Flight II.....	1
AV 244, Aerospace Regulatory Process .....	3
AV 300, Commercial Ground School.....	3
AV 316, Aerospace Transportation.....	3
AV 320, Commercial Flight I .....	1
AV 321, Commercial Flight II.....	1
AV 401, Airport Management .....	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>30</b>

**Plus Option A**

AV 440, Flight Instructor Flight .....	1
AV 441, Flight Instructor Ground School.....	3
AV 457, Flight Instructor Practicum.....	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>6</b>

**Or Option B**

AV 442, Multi-Engine Flight .....	1
AV 443, Multi-Engine Ground School .....	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>2</b>

**Criminal Justice Requirements:**

SOC 216, Criminology <b>or</b> CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ 440, Seminar in Criminal Justice <b>or</b>	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship <b>or</b>	
CRJ 302, Criminal Procedure.....	3
SOC/CRJ Electives (300-400 level).....	15
<b>Total</b>	<b>24</b>

The student must take a minimum of 12 credits of Criminal Justice courses at the 300-400 level. These 12 credits may include those courses specified in the degree requirements listed above.

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 302 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

**Courses of Instruction:**

**102 Introduction to the Aerospace Industry (3)**

This course provides a broad survey of all aspects of the aerospace industry including its history and development.

- 112 Private Pilot Ground School (3)**  
Academic ground training for the Private Pilot Certificate. Aeronautical topics include principles of flight, FAA regulations, visual flight rules, aircraft systems and performance, meteorology, navigation, aviation physiology and flight planning. Students must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test.
- 113 Private Pilot Flight I (1)**  
Introduction to dual flight instruction, takeoffs and landings, airport operations, emergency procedures, and solo flights. Students must successfully meet all FAA flight proficiency requirements. Prerequisites: FAA Student Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class III certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 114 Private Pilot Flight II (1)**  
Dual flight instruction, solo and cross-country flights, flight maneuvers, navigation, emergency operations, and review of FAA Private Pilot requirements. Successful award of FAA Private Pilot certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Student Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class III medical certificate or higher medical certificate, FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test passed.
- 202 Aerospace Safety (3)**  
This course explores the historical roots of aviation safety, the role of attitudes on safety procedures, safety legislation, organizations, and safety planning. It examines in depth the roles of the National Transportation Safety Board and the Federal Aviation Administration in accident prevention and investigation including aviation accident analysis, federal and state legislation, safety programs, accident reports, sources of accidents, and safety trends.
- 210 Instrument Ground School (3)**  
Academic instruction for the Instrument Rating. Principles of instrument flight, air traffic control, IFR procedures, analyses of weather information, IFR planning, emergency procedures and pilot decisions. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Instrument Knowledge test. Prerequisite: FAA Private Pilot Knowledge test passed.
- 216 National Airspace System (3)**  
The evolution, current state, and future of the National Airspace System with an emphasis on its current and future impact on the domestic and international aviation industry. Defines the Federal Aviation Administration's role in the operation, maintenance, and planned modernization of Air Traffic Control facilities, airways and navigational aids, landing aids, and airports. The users of the system, their needs, and issues with the system's operation and planned modernization are examined.
- 220 Instrument Flight I (1)**  
Advanced dual flight instruction, solo and advanced cross-country navigation, and emergency operations. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate and FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 221 Instrument Flight II (1)**  
Advanced flight instruction and cross-country navigation. Successful award of FAA Instrument rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Instrument Knowledge test passed.
- 244 Aerospace Regulatory Process (3)**  
This is a survey of the Federal and international regulatory process of the aviation industry. Historical and current trends, past and present legislation, conventions and treaties are examined as they correlate to the development of aviation regulations.

- 265 Aerospace Accident Investigation (3)**  
A study of aerospace accident investigation as performed by the National Transportation Safety Board, Federal Aviation Administration, and the International Civil Aviation Organization. It includes field investigation techniques and laboratory methods for accident reconstruction, the analysis of flight accidents and incidents using time and event correlation of cockpit voice and flight data recorders, and air traffic control tapes.
- 275 General Aviation Management (3)**  
This course examines the organization of the general aviation industry including management of aircraft maintenance and flight line operations and pertinent Federal regulations. This course also includes an in-depth examination of corporate and business flight departments including aircraft and equipment evaluation, maintenance, flight operations, administration and financial considerations.
- 285 Aviation Security Operations (3)**  
This course critically examines the nature of aerospace security with US and international civil aviation and analyzes the legal and regulatory regimen that applies to it. Students will study programmatic strategies and management approaches to address the changing challenges of air and ground security in the industry.
- 300 Commercial Ground School (3)**  
Academic ground training for the Commercial Pilot certificate. Topics include airplane performance, VFR cross-country planning, FARs applicable to commercial pilot operations, operation of advanced systems appropriate to complex airplanes and aircrew physiology. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Commercial Pilot Knowledge test. Prerequisite: FAA Instrument Knowledge test passed.
- 311 Aerospace Law (3)**  
This course is to increase the student's knowledge of fundamentals of aviation law. Emphasis is placed on the various factors for management and pilots to consider while minimizing exposure to legal liability.
- 316 Aerospace Transportation (3)**  
This is a survey course of the development of the air transportation industry leading to the current airline and general aviation industry strategies including mergers, consolidation, and acquisition. An examination of future airline strategies will be studied.
- 320 Commercial Flight I (1)**  
Dual flight instruction, solo and cross-country flights, commercial flight maneuvers, and emergency operations. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate with Instrument rating and FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 321 Commercial Flight II (1)**  
Complex aircraft flight training, commercial flight maneuvers, and night flights. Successful award of FAA Commercial Pilot certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Private Pilot Certificate and Instrument rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Commercial Pilot Knowledge test passed.
- 331 Airline Management (3)**  
An introduction to the administration aspects of airline operation and management. The course includes the administrative organizations, economics of airline management, operational structures, and Federal regulatory requirements. This course also includes a study of the geographic, economic, social, and political environments of international aviation. The issues considered are the globalization of the marketplace, technology transfer, and legal and political implications on the industry including bilateral route agreements and treaties.

- 365 Human Factors in the Aerospace Industry (3)**  
This course is an overview of the human role in aircraft accident prevention, including the issues and problems involved in aircraft accidents and incidents. The course includes the analysis of the complex decision-making process leading up to an accident or incident.
- 401 Airport Management (3)**  
A study of modern airports, including the roles, functions, and status in the national air transportation system; sponsorship and management alternatives; airport development, operations, and business matters; and discussion of current and emerging public airport issues. Prerequisite: Junior or senior standing.
- 425 Airport Planning and Design (3)**  
This course introduces the students to the requirements, issues and processes involved with airport planning. Sources of aviation data, forecasting methodologies, the airport master planning process and environmental issues and requirements are studied. It also examines the analysis and application of Federal Aviation Administration standards for airport design with an emphasis on the airside components. Other topics include airport capacity calculations; movement area geometry; pavement, runway, and taxiway design; approach and departure gradients; terminal facilities; and heliports.
- 440 Flight Instructor Flight (1)**  
Flight instruction to qualify FAA Commercial and Instrument rated pilots for FAA Flight Instructor Certificate. Successful award of FAA Flight Instructor Certificate is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Flight Instructor Knowledge test passed.
- 441 Flight Instructor Ground School (3)**  
Academic ground training for Flight Instructor Certificate. Topics include principles of learning and communication, instructional methodologies, and instructional technology. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA Flight Instructor Knowledge test. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.
- 442 Multi-Engine Flight (1)**  
Introduction to multi-engine operation procedures, engine-out procedures, emergency procedures, and maximum performance. Successful award of FAA Multi-Engine Airplane rating is required for completion of this course. Requirements: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument Rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 443 Multi-Engine Ground School (1)**  
Academic ground instruction for Multi-Engine Rating. Aeronautical topics include understanding of multi-engine aircraft performance and systems integration. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Instrument rating; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.
- 444 Instrument Flight Instructor Ground School (2)**  
Academic instruction for Flight or Ground Instructor Instrument rating. Topics include teaching methodologies involved with students learning all instrument flight procedures. Student must attain a passing score on the course completion examination and the FAA written examination. Prerequisites: FAA Certified Flight Instructor Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate, or permission of the instructor.

- 445 Instrument Flight Instructor Flight (1)**  
Flight training to prepare FAA Certified Flight Instructors to develop analytical skills and abilities to instruct students in all instrument procedures. Successful award of FAA Certified Flight Instructor – Instrument rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Flight Instructor – Airplane Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate; FAA Flight Instructor Instrument Knowledge test passed; or permission of the instructor.
- 446 Multi-Engine Flight Instructor Flight (3)**  
Training for pilots to become multi-engine flight instructors by analyzing student procedures and maneuvers in multi-engine aircraft and flight training devices. Successful award of FAA Multi-Engine Instructor rating is required for completion of this course. Prerequisites: FAA Commercial Pilot Certificate with Multi-Engine Rating, and FAA Flight Instructor Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate.
- 457 Flight Instructor Practicum (P/F) (2)**  
The qualified student is provided an initial practical experience as a flight instructor intern in planning and/or conducting flight training or working on the administrative processes under the supervision of the Chief Flight Instructor or his/her designee. Prerequisites: FAA Flight Instructor – Airplane Certificate; FAA Medical Class II certificate or higher medical certificate or permission of department chair.
- 472 Internship in the Aerospace Industry (1-12)**  
The internship program offers advanced students an opportunity to apply and practice the concepts and principles learned in the classroom that are related to the student's program of study. The student must be prepared to offset additional travel and living expenses, and a competitive application and selection process may be involved. Each student must provide a detailed written professional analysis of the experience and make an oral presentation to departmental faculty upon completion. Prerequisite: Cumulative grade point average of 2.0 and approval by the department chair.
- 475 Aviation Management Topics (3)**  
An overview of aviation management topics related to management within the areas of schedule carriers, fixed base operations (FBO's), cargo operations, corporate aviation, and charter/instruction services. Topics to be emphasized will depend upon the students' interests and needs. Prerequisite: AV 316
- 480 Airline Business Strategy Simulation (3)**  
Students are provided an opportunity to manage a simulated start up airline. The students are posed problems in a simulation model that they participate in, analyze and resolve as airline executives. Prerequisite: AV 316.
- 485 Advanced Aircraft Systems (2)**  
Provides the student with an understanding of systems employed on technologically advanced, sophisticated aircraft. Prerequisite: Commercial Flight Certificate or permission of Department Chair.



---



---

# ART (ART)

---



---

Ms. Diane P. Kendrick, *Chair*  
 Mr. Robert C. Marsh

The University offers a liberal arts program with a range of studio work as well as basic study in art history for the student interested in a Bachelor of Arts degree or Bachelor of Arts degree with certification to teach.

The Bachelor of Arts degree prepares students for continued study or potential positions in galleries, commercial art, or in community arts organizations.

Students in the Bachelor of Arts program are encouraged to build a balanced background in the visual arts rather than to concentrate in a single studio area.

Students who are art majors will be required to attend two portfolio assessments while enrolled in the program. The first will take place after the student has completed twelve to fifteen hours of studio work near the end of the sophomore year. The second portfolio assessment will take place the fall semester of the senior year.

All art majors are required to exhibit in the annual student show which exhibits work from studio courses.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Art:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ART 100, The Visual Arts .....	3
ART 110, Basic Drawing .....	3
ART 120, Basic Color and Design.....	3
ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design.....	3
Art History (select from: ART 201, 205, 305, 306, 405) .....	9
Studio	
ART 223, Painting <b>or</b> ART 310, Drawing .....	3
ART 283, General Crafts <b>or</b> ART 330, Sculpture.....	3
ART 340, Graphics .....	3
Advanced Studio (select from the following) .....	9
ART 223, Painting	
ART 270, Applied Design <b>or</b> ART 351, Applied Three-Dimensional Design	
ART 283, General Crafts <b>or</b> ART 383, Advanced Crafts	
ART 310, Drawing	
ART 323, Advanced Painting	
ART 330, Sculpture <b>or</b> ART 430, Advanced Sculpture	
ART 440, Advanced Graphics	
ART 362, Pottery <b>or</b> ART 462, Advanced Pottery	
ART 450, Special Studies in Art	
ART 490, Independent Study	
ART 400, Senior Seminar .....	<u>3</u>
Total	42

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Art

### Freshman Year:

- ART 100, Visual Arts
- ART 110, Basic Drawing
- ART 120, Basic Color and Design

### Sophomore Year:

- ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design
- ART 201, Art History (or 205)
- ART 223, Painting (or 310)

### Junior Year:

- ART Recommended Elective
- ART 283, General Crafts (or 330)
- ART 305, Art History (or 306)
- ART Recommended Elective

### Senior Year:

- ART 305, Art History (or 306 or 405)
- ART 340, Graphics (or 440)
- ART Recommended Elective
- ART 400, Senior Seminar

## Requirements for a Major in Art with a Teaching License:

### Grades PK-12

	Semester Hours
ART 100, The Visual Arts .....	3
ART 110, Basic Drawing .....	3
ART 120, Basic Color and Design.....	3
ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design.....	3
ART 201, Art History: Ancient Through Medieval .....	3
ART 205, Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance .....	3
ART 223, Painting .....	3
ART 283, General Crafts .....	3
ART 300, Methods in Art Education I (professional course).....	3
ART 301, Methods in Art Education II (practicum .....	3
ART 305, Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism <b>or</b> ART 306, Realism Through Modern <b>or</b> ART 405, Non-Western Art.....	3
ART 310, Drawing.....	3
ART 330, Sculpture .....	3
ART 340, Graphics .....	3
ART 362, Pottery .....	3
ART 400, Senior Seminar .....	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>48</b>

Teacher Licensure in Art includes all grade levels (PK-12). The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license may be found on page 115.

## Sample Four-Year Sequence: Art with a Teaching License

### Freshman Year:

ART 100, Visual Arts  
ART 110, Basic Drawing  
ART 120, Basic Color and Design  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication

### Sophomore Year:

ART 130, Three-Dimensional Design  
ART 201, Art History: Ancient Through Medieval  
ART 223, Painting  
ED 290, Foundations of Education  
HIS 201, U.S. History I (or 202)  
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems  
PE Fitness Course  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

### Junior Year:

ART 330, Sculpture  
ART 205, Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance  
ART 283, General Crafts  
ART 305, Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism (or 306)  
ART 310, Drawing  
ART 300, Methods in Art Education I  
ED 322, Education Psychology  
ED 334, Content Area Reading and Language Development  
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy (or 210)  
ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6  
ED 379, Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6

### Senior Year:

ART 340, Graphics  
ART 362, Pottery  
ART 400, Senior Seminar  
ART 301, Methods in Art Education II  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## Human-Computer Interaction Program

Averett University offers a HCI program for students who choose art, computer science/mathematics, computer information systems, or psychology as their primary major. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments. The program is described on page 153.

## Minor

A student may choose to minor either in Studio Art or Art History. The following are the requirements for a minor in Studio Art: ART 100, 110, 120, 130, and 6 additional hours selected from ART 223, 270, 283, 310, 330, 340, 351, or 362, for a total of 18 semester hours.

Courses for a minor in Art History are: ART 100 and 400 and 12 hours selected from ART 201, 205, 305, 306, 405 for a total of 18 semester hours. A student may **not** minor in studio art or art history if he/she is an art major.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## **Courses of Instruction**

- 100 The Visual Arts (3)**  
An introduction to images and structures created by mankind, investigations into how the eye sees, what is visually stimulating, materials and approaches used in art, and the cultural concepts found in the creation and appreciation of works of art. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education.
- 110 Basic Drawing (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of drawing in which approaches, techniques, and materials are investigated. Six studio hours each week.
- 120 Basic Design (3)**  
A study of the fundamental concepts of composition and color in two-dimensional structuring. Six studio hours each week.
- 130 Three-Dimensional Design (3)**  
An introduction to fundamental concepts and various materials in three-dimensional design. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisite or Corequisite: ART 120.
- 201 Art History: Ancient to Medieval (3)**  
A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture from the pre-classical civilization through the Early Christian period in Western Europe. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 100.
- 205 Art History: Medieval Through Renaissance (3)**  
A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture in Western Europe from the early Middle Ages through the Northern Renaissance. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: ART 100.
- 210 Introductory Studio Techniques (1-3)**  
An introduction to studio work for the student interested in, but not majoring in art. Studio work will concentrate on one specific art area each time the course is offered. Drawing and design, painting, crafts, ceramics, or graphics will be covered on an alternating basis. Each area may be repeated for a maximum of 3 semester hours credit. No more than 12 semester hours of Art 210 may be credited toward a degree. Two studio hours per semester hour credit. Not applicable toward Art major.
- 223 Painting (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of various techniques and media used in painting processes. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 270 Applied Design (3)**  
An analysis of color and composition emphasizing projects in applied two-dimensional design, such as lay-out advertising, fabric design, and commercial reproduction techniques. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 110, 120.

- 283 General Crafts (3)**  
An introduction to various craft media such as metal, glass, and fiber. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 300 Methods in Art Education I (3)**  
A detailed study of methods, materials and art lesson planning, which includes art Standards of Learning (SOLs), for various age levels from elementary to secondary school. Three hours each week. Prerequisite: Completion of 24 hours toward Art major.
- 301 Methods in Art Education II (3)**  
An opportunity for prospective art teachers to explore teaching strategies and use materials in art appropriate for the child in kindergarten through grade 6. including implementation of art SOLs and SOLs used in the public schools. Three hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 300 and completion of 24 hours toward Art major.
- 305 Art History: Baroque Through Romanticism (3)**  
A survey of painting, sculpture, and architecture in Western Europe during the seventeenth, eighteenth, and early nineteenth centuries. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 100.
- 306 Art History: Realism Through Modern (3)**  
A survey of the various art movements in Europe and America from the early nineteenth century through the present time. This course satisfies 3 semester hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 100.
- 310 Drawing (3)**  
A detailed study of drawing techniques including figure-drawing and drawing as a finished art medium. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120. Non-majors: ART 110.
- 323 Advanced Painting (3)**  
A detailed study of painting with concentration in one specific paint medium. Presentation of finished work stressed. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 223.
- 330 Sculpture (3)**  
An introduction to various materials and approaches used in sculpture. Six studio hours each week. Art major prerequisites: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 340 Graphics (3)**  
An introduction to basic studies in graphic processes and printing techniques, including relief, intaglio, lithography, serigraphy, and calligraphy. Six hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit but must be in a different print medium. Prerequisites for art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 351 Applied Three-Dimensional Design (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of applied three-dimensional design in areas such as packaging and functional objects planned for mass production. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.

- 362 Pottery (3)**  
An introduction to clay, including hand building and wheel throwing methods. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisites for Art majors: ART 110, 120, 130. Non-art majors: No prerequisites.
- 383 Advanced Crafts (3)**  
A detailed study in craft media including mixed media and more complicated processes. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 283 with study in same craft medium.
- 400 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A detailed study involving both individual projects and group discussions. Two discussion hours each week plus individual work. Prerequisite: Senior standing and completion of 24 hours toward the Art major. Art History minor: 12 hours of Art.
- 405 Non-Western Art (3)**  
A survey of the painting, sculpture and architecture of Asia, South and Central America, and Africa. This course satisfies 3 semester hours in the General Education requirements for Fine Arts. Three lecture hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 100.
- 430 Advanced Sculpture (3)**  
A detailed study of sculptural processes exploring more complicated techniques and greater scale. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisites: ART 130 and 330.
- 440 Advanced Graphics (3)**  
A detailed study in graphics with a concentration in one specific print medium. Includes presentation of finished work and editioning of prints. Six studio hours each week. Prerequisite: ART 340, with study in same print medium.
- 462 Advanced Pottery (3)**  
A detailed study in pottery production methods, glaze mixing, and kiln and shop management. Six studio hours each week. May be repeated for a maximum of 6 semester hours credit. Prerequisite: ART 362.

---

---

# BIOLOGY (BIO)

---

---

Dr. James S. Caldwell, *Chair*  
Dr. Edward W. Fisher  
Ms. Laura Meder

A student who chooses a major in Biology may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student may choose a concentration in **Ecology/Environmental Biology**, consisting of 39 semester hours in Biology/Environmental Science courses and 12 semester hours in Chemistry, or a concentration in **Biomedical Sciences**, consisting of 35 semester hours in Biology and 16 semester hours in Chemistry/Physics. Alternatively, a student desiring to major in Biology, but who has career goals not consistent with either of the two concentrations, may consult with the chair of the department and design a course of study with those goals in mind. The course of study must be approved by the Biology faculty. This plan should be submitted as early as possible since some courses are not offered each year.

A degree in Biology will prepare the student for career opportunities in graduate study, professional schools, teaching, or in scientific research with government agencies, academic institutions or in various health fields. It is our goal to provide the best possible foundation upon which the student can build in the chosen area of concentration.

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all major courses taken at Averett University in the declared major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives in Biology, Environmental Sciences and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors will take a **comprehensive examination** administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the exam will encompass all core required courses for the degree and will be taken in the first semester of their senior year. The student is required to make 65 out of a possible 90 points to pass. Students not passing the exam will be given an opportunity to repeat the exam. Given the timing of the exam, all core courses should be completed before the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the University are maintained.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

## Core Requirements for All Majors:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 102, General Botany .....	4
and/or*	
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics .....	4
BIO 301, Microbiology .....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry .....	<u>8</u>
	Total 24-28

\*BIO 101 is required for all majors. BIO 102 **and** BIO 103 are required for the concentration in Ecology/Environmental Biology. Only BIO 103 is required for the concentration in Biomedical Sciences.

## Concentration in Ecology/Environmental Biology:

In addition to the core courses, the following courses are also required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 330, General Ecology .....	4
CH 206, Biological Chemistry .....	4
ENS 330, Environmental Chemistry .....	4
BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology .....	3
<b>The student will take an additional 8 hours from the following courses:</b>	
	Semester Hours
BIO 416, General Taxonomy .....	4
BIO 335, Ornithology .....	4
BIO 340, Field Zoology .....	4
ENS 215, Environmental Problems.....	4
ENS 425, Field Study.....	1-4
BIO 342/ENS 342/POS 342, Environmental Policy and Law .....	<u>3</u>
Total (including core)	51

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Biology:

### Ecology/Environmental Biology

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 102, General Botany  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics  
CH 206, Biological Chemistry  
BIO 330, General Ecology

Junior Year:

BIO 301, Microbiology  
ENS 330, Environmental Chemistry

Senior Year:

BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology  
BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective  
BIO 300- or 400-level Recommended Elective



## Concentration in Biomedical Sciences:

The following courses are also required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology .....	4
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences.....	3

The student will take an additional 12 hours from the following courses:

	Semester Hours
BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I & II.....	8
BIO 302, Immunology .....	4
BIO 312, Parasitology.....	4
BIO 325, Developmental Biology.....	4
BIO 348, Virology .....	4

The student will take an additional 8 hours from the following courses:

	Semester Hours
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis.....	4
CH 301, 302, 303, 304, Organic Chemistry .....	8
CH 401, Biochemistry.....	4
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics.....	8
Total (including core)	51

Students in either concentration may take electives from the other concentration.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

### Biology: Biomedical Sciences

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry

Sophomore Year:

BIO 203, Genetics  
BIO 200 or higher level Recommended Elective  
BIO 301, Microbiology  
CH 200 or higher level Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

BIO/CH Recommended Elective  
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology

Senior Year:

BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences  
CH Recommended Elective  
CH/PSC Recommended Elective

## Requirements for a Major in Biology with a

### Teaching License: Grades 6-12

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 102, General Botany .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology .....	4
BIO 203, Genetics .....	4
BIO204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I .....	4
BIO205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II .....	4
BIO 301, Microbiology .....	4
BIO 330, General Ecology .....	4
BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology .....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II .....	8
CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II .....	6
CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II .....	2
PSC 201, General College Physics I .....	4
MTH160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I .....	3
Total	62

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in Biology may be found on page 115.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Biology with a Teaching License

##### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 BIO 102, General Botany  
 BIO 103, General Zoology  
 MTH 171, Applied Calculus or MTH 201, Calculus I  
 CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II  
 TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

##### Sophomore Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
 MTH160, Introduction to Statistics  
 PSC 201, General College Physics I  
 BIO 203, Genetics  
 BIO 301, Microbiology  
 PSY 205, Developmental Psychology  
 ED 290, Foundations of Education (second semester)  
 HIS 201 or 202, American History I or II  
 HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

##### Junior Year:

BIO204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I  
 BIO205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II  
 BIO 360, Cellular and Molecular Biology  
 CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II  
 CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II  
 ED 322, Educational Psychology  
 ED 476, 477, Secondary School Curriculum, Teaching Assistant  
 PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics  
 PE Fitness Course

Senior Year:

- BIO 330, General Ecology
- BIO 300+ Elective
- ED 404, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
- ED 497, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## **Biology: Radiologic Technology**

For the student who is a Certified Radiologic Technologist, i.e., who has successfully passed the Technician's Registry Examination in Radiologic Technology, Averett offers a Bachelor of Science degree in Biology: Radiologic Technology. The University will allow up to 56 semester hours of elective credit to a student who has completed a hospital-based program in Radiologic Technology. Community college credits in Radiologic Technology will be transferred in the same manner that other community college credits are transferred.

### **Requirements for a Major in Biology:**

#### **Radiologic Technology:**

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology.....	4
BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences.....	3
Biology Electives (300-400 level).....	8
MTH160, Introduction to Statistics.....	<u>3</u>
	Total 22

### **Sample Three-Year Course Sequence: Biology: Radiologic Technology**

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- BIO 103, General Zoology

Sophomore Year:

- CSS 203, Introduction to Statistics
- BIO 300- or 400-level Elective

Junior Year:

- BIO 300- or 400-level Elective
- BIO 461, Topics in Biomedical Sciences

## **Minor**

A student electing a minor in Biology will complete at least 19 hours, including BIO 101 and at least 10 hours at the 300-400 level for which the prerequisite has been met. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

### **101 Introduction to Biology (4)**

This course is an introduction to the chemistry and metabolism of living organisms. Study of the scientific method, principles of ecology and genetics, the structural and physiological features of plant and animal cells and tissues and the principles of animal classification and evolutionary relationships will be included. Laboratory exercises designed to underscore these principles will accompany lecture material.

### **102 General Botany (4)**

A survey of the plant kingdom with emphasis placed on morphology, physiology, taxonomic relationships including ecological and evolutionary principles. Field trips are taken, and plants and trees on the campus are studied. Prerequisite: BIO 101.

### **103 General Zoology (4)**

A survey of the animal kingdom with emphasis placed on morphology, physiology, taxonomic relationships including ecological and evolutionary principles. Prerequisite: BIO 101.

### **203 Genetics (4)**

A study of the structure and function of DNA. The structure of genes and how they are used and regulated will be stressed, as well as the role of DNA as the foundation of heredity. Problem solving using classical Mendelian patterns of inheritance and variations on these patterns will be performed. Other topics include biotechnology, population genetics and the role of genetics in disease. Molecular genetic techniques and their applications in biotechnology will be stressed in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.

### **204, 205 Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II (4,4)**

A detailed study of the structure and function of the human body, its organs and systems. BIO 204 includes the levels of organization found in the body, metabolism, integumentary system, skeletal system, muscular system, and nervous system. BIO 205 includes the endocrine system, cardiovascular system, respiratory system, digestive system, urinary system, fluid and electrolyte balance and reproductive system. Prerequisites: BIO 101 with a grade of C or better, or permission of instructor.

### **215 Environmental Problems (Same as ENS 215) (4)**

The study of the interdependency and interconnectedness related to power (fossil fuel, nuclear, solar, and other alternatives). Air and water pollution, waste generation and disposal, wetlands, soils and chemicals and water and sewage treatment methods will be discussed. Laboratory exercises related to these topics will be conducted. No prerequisites.

### **301 Microbiology (4)**

A study of the structure, classification, and function of micro-organisms as related to public health, industrial processes, and their roles in nature. Basic techniques are introduced in the laboratory, including isolation and identification of representative organisms. Prerequisites: BIO101 and 102 or 103, or permission of instructor.

### **302 Immunology (4)**

A study of the biological, chemical and genetic basis of the human immune response to various diseases. Critical reading of classical and current scientific literature will be stressed in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 103 and either BIO 203 or 301, or permission of instructor.

- 312 Parasitology (4)**  
The study of the distribution, morphology, life history, economic importance, pathogenesis and control of some of the parasites of man and domestic animals, protozoans through helminths. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 325 Developmental Biology (4)**  
The study of embryology and development. The emphasis will be on human development, but other vertebrates will also be studied to introduce developmental patterns, principles and evolutionary trends. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 330 General Ecology (4)**  
A study of the interrelationships between plant and animal communities and their environment. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 102, and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 335 Ornithology (4)**  
This course is a study of the identification, life histories, distribution, abundance and ecology of birds. The abundance and distribution of various species of birds are strong indicators of the state of various ecosystems. Lectures, laboratories and field trips are employed to accomplish the goals of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 340 Field Zoology (4)**  
This course is a study of the identification, life histories, distribution (biogeography) and ecology of selected invertebrate groups and all vertebrate groups. The abundance of these groups indicate the stability of various ecosystems. Lectures, laboratories and field trips are employed to accomplish the goals of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 342 Environmental Policy and Law (Same as ENS 342 and POS 342) (3)**  
A survey of environmental laws and regulations in the United States: who makes the laws and why, and who enforces the laws and how. Consideration will be given to the experience of other countries and to alternative paradigms of environmental protection.
- 348 Virology (4)**  
A study of the structure, genetics, pathogenic mechanisms and the nature of virus-host cell interaction in the major virus groups. Bacterial viruses, plant viruses and animal viruses will be included, although a significant portion of the course will be spent on the medical impact of human viruses. A portion of the course will be devoted to the AIDS epidemic, including the medical, social, psychological and economic impact of this disease. Reading of current research literature and case studies will be stressed in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101 and 103, or permission of instructor.
- 360 Cellular and Molecular Biology (4)**  
The study of biological processes of the cell. Cell structure and basic housekeeping processes that all cells perform will be studied, as well as cell signaling and selected specialized cellular processes. Differences between the prokaryotic and the eukaryotic cell will be emphasized. Molecular biological techniques will be emphasized in the laboratory portion of the course. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 103, 203, CH 101 and 102, or permission of instructor.
- 416 General Taxonomy (4)**  
A study of the principles of taxonomy and nomenclature and the use of taxonomic keys to identify the various species of the various divisions of the plant kingdom and the phyla of the animal kingdom. The proper identification of species is absolutely necessary in any environmental study. Prerequisites: BIO 101, 102, and 103, or permission of instructor.

**461 Topics in Biomedical Sciences (3)**

A seminar course that will address problems, controversial issues, ethical questions, and the process and future of medical care and research in the world. Readings, oral, written and video presentations, and class discussions will comprise the format of this course. This course will meet University writing, oral and technology competencies. Prerequisite: Senior Biology majors or permission of instructor.

**462 Topics in Environmental Biology (Same as ENS 462) (3)**

A seminar course that will examine the scientific, historical, ethical, political, and economic dimensions of the environment. Readings, oral, written and video presentations, and class discussions will comprise the format of this course. This course will meet University writing, oral and technology competencies. Prerequisite: Junior or Senior Biology majors or permission of instructor.

**465 Biological Research (Hours to be arranged)**

The objective of this course is to allow students who desire an introduction to biological research to receive it. The research will either be directed by a faculty member or as an arranged internship/co-op with academic labs, industry, biological field stations, Virginia Institute of Marine Science, etc. Prerequisites: Permission of faculty member and completion of junior year.

---

---

# BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (BSA)

---

---

Dr. Lyle E. Cady, Jr.  
Dr. John Guarino  
Dr. Michael Jernigan  
Mr. Vince Kania  
Dr. Alice Obenchain-Leeson  
Dr. Wally Saunders  
Dr. Doug Spadaro  
Dr. Eugene Steadman, Jr.

Dr. Phil Sturm  
Dr. Chin-Chyuan Tai  
Dr. John Termini  
Mr. Brian Turner  
Dr. Thomas Vick, *Chair*  
Dr. Jeff Woo  
Dr. Doug Woundy  
Dr. Peggy Wright

The Business Administration Department provides programs to expand the educational foundation of students for successful service in commercial, nonprofit, and government organizations or for entering graduate programs. Students first acquire knowledge and skills that are generally needed in business and may then concentrate on a specialized business function such as accounting, finance, management, or marketing. Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree with two or more concentrations in Business Administration by completing all requirements for both concentrations. However, only two concentrations within the major will be noted on the student's transcript. A minor in Business Administration is also available.

Students with a major in Business Administration must achieve a 2.00 GPA for all courses in the major. The 2.00 may not include more than two grades of D. All students majoring in Business Administration must satisfactorily complete Mathematics 171, its equivalent, or a higher numbered math course.

Students who earn a concentration in **Accounting** must have 126 semester hours for graduation.

## Common Core Course Requirements for All Degrees in Business Administration

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics .....	3
BSA 206, Business Communications.....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I.....	3
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II.....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA 370, Principles of Finance .....	3
BSA 434, Business Law.....	3
	Total 33

## Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:

### Accounting Concentration:

Students who earn a concentration in BSA:Accounting must have a total of 126 hours for graduation.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses .....	33
BSA 320, I Taxation of Individuals.....	3
BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting .....	3
BSA 343, Intermediate Accounting I.....	3
BSA 344, Intermediate Accounting II.....	3
BSA 345, Intermediate Accounting III .....	3
BSA 420, Auditing.....	3
BSA 422, Advanced Accounting .....	<u>3</u>
	Total 54

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Business Administration: Accounting

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications  
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II  
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
BSA 370, Principles of Finance  
BSA 343, Intermediate Accounting I  
BSA 344, Intermediate Accounting II  
BSA 320, Taxation of Individuals  
BSA 325, Managerial and Cost Accounting

Senior Year:

BSA 345, Intermediate Accounting III  
BSA 422, Advanced Accounting  
BSA 420, Auditing  
BSA 434, Business Law



## Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:

### Finance Concentration

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

Common Core Courses.....	33
BSA 371, Intermediate Finance.....	3
BSA 373, International Financial Management .....	3
BSA 475, Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management .....	3
Choose 3 of the following courses .....	9
BSA 322, Managerial Accounting	
BSA 372, Money and Banking	
BSA 474, Commercial Bank Management	
BSA 476, Derivatives and Risk Management	
Total for concentration	51

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Business Administration: Finance Concentration

##### Freshman Year:

CSS113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
BSA206, Business Communication

##### Sophomore Year:

BSA221, Principles of Accounting I  
BSA222, Principles of Accounting II  
BSA270, Personal Finance \*\* Elective course not required for concentration  
BSA370, Principles of Finance  
ECO201, Principles of Microeconomics  
ECO202, Principles of Macroeconomics  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

##### Junior Year:

BSA305, Principles of Management  
BSA310, Principles of Marketing  
BSA371, Intermediate Finance  
BSA475, Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management  
BSA434, Business Law  
BSA choice from list

##### Senior Year:

BSA373, International Finance  
BSA choice from list  
BSA choice from list

## Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:

### Management Science Concentration:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester hours
Common Core Courses .....	33
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership .....	3
BSA 354, Human Resources Management .....	3
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management.....	3
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making .....	3
BSA 444, Management Strategy .....	3
BSA 480, International Business .....	<u>3</u>
	Total 51

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Business Administration: Management Science

##### Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

##### Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications  
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II  
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

##### Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
BSA 370, Principles of Finance  
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership  
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management

##### Senior Year:

BSA 354, Human Resources Management  
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making  
BSA 434, Business Law  
BSA 444, Management Strategy  
BSA 480, International Business

## Requirements for a Major in Business Administration:

### Global Marketing Management Concentration:

The Business Administration: Global Marketing Management program is designed to assist students in their preparation for pursuing careers in areas such as selling, advertising and promotion, customer service or marketing management as well as for pursuing graduate study. This curriculum will provide the student opportunities to develop abilities that are necessary to pursue careers in public, private and entrepreneurial enterprises. Applicable positions are found in manufacturing and service businesses, industry, government, consulting and non-profit organizations.

The curriculum provides both theoretical concepts and applied practice. “Hands on” experience is provided through the completion of requirements such as case studies, group projects and internships. In addition, students are expected to refine their skills in areas such as concise articulation, problem solving, teamwork, information synthesis, computer literacy and understanding the global dimensions of business.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
Common Core Courses .....	33
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership .....	3
BSA 438, Managing Global Marketing Strategies .....	3
BSA 444, Management Strategy .....	3
*Three of the following:.....	9
BSA 349, Buying Behavior and Integrated Marketing Communications	
BSA 352, Sales Management	
BSA 359, Marketing Research and Planning	
BSA 449, Internship	
(a maximum of 3 semester hours of internship credit may be applied toward the major, with permission of instructor)	
Total	51

\*Student-selected alternate course requests that are professionally based, recommended by the advisor, and approved by the department chairperson may be used. These courses may be transfer courses.

**Students in this concentration must have a grade of C or higher in BSA 310, and BSA 206.**

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Business Administration: Global Marketing Management

Freshman Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

BSA 206, Business Communications  
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II  
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
BSA 370, Principles of Finance  
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership  
BSA Recommended Elective

Senior Year:

BSA 434, Business Law  
BSA 444, Management Strategy  
BSA Recommended Elective  
BSA Recommended Elective  
BSA 438, Managing Global Marketing Strategies

## Minor

Students electing a minor in Business Administration must complete 18 semester hours as follows: BSA 221, 222, ECO 202, plus 9 hours of BSA courses numbered 300 or higher.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

**206 Business Communications (3)**

This course is designed to improve written and oral communication skills within the context of the business environment. Students will learn to prepare various business letters, reports, and other forms of written communication. Decision-making and problem-solving techniques are emphasized through an introduction to case study methods. Students are introduced to electronic presentation media and encouraged to use other technological means to communicate with the professor and with each other. Prerequisite: CSS 113 or permission of instructor.

**221, 222 Principles of Accounting I, II (3,3)**

A study of basic accounting theories and procedures for dealing with activities of sole proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations.

**270 Personal Finance (3)**

This course will present the principles and techniques that individuals may use to manage their income and assets to achieve their personal goals over their life and career cycles. Other topics will include basic asset and credit management, managing investment and insurance needs, and retirement and estate planning.

**305 Principles of Management (3)**

An introduction to the art and science of management and managerial functions. The subject of management is approached from a multidimensional viewpoint in relation to the concepts, principles, policies, and practices necessary to accomplish managerial tasks. The theory of management, the application of theory to managerial situations, and the basic classification theory of the principles of management are emphasized. Prerequisite: BSA 206 and 221 and ENG 112.

- 310 Principles of Marketing (3)**  
An introductory course which analyzes marketing as a total concept involving a process of moving a product or service from the originator to the consumer. Prerequisites: BSA 206, 221 and ENG 112. Prerequisite or Corequisite: CSS 113.
- 320 Taxation of Individuals (3)**  
An analysis of the underlying principles of the federal income tax law from the viewpoint of the individual as well as the three major organizational forms of business firms, i.e., proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations. Prerequisite: BSA 221.
- 322 Managerial Accounting (3)**  
A study of accounting as used by operating managers including budgets, costs, funds flow analysis, and other basic tools of control. Prerequisite: BSA 222.
- 324 Business Finance (3)**  
A study of the procurement and management of wealth by privately owned profit-seeking enterprises. Topics include: the role of financial management, financial statement analysis, ratio analysis, financial forecasting, budgeting, valuation of securities, assets management, risk, time value of money, leverage, and long and short term financing. Prerequisites: CSS 203 and BSA 206 and 221.
- 325 Managerial and Cost Accounting (3)**  
An analysis of cost systems, including job order, process, and standard costs and the preparation of financial statements for manufacturing firms. Prerequisite: BSA 222.
- 326 Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership (3)**  
A study of how people operate in organizations, how the structure of the organization can affect their performance and the key elements to organizational leadership. Case studies illustrating concepts regarding human behavior and development in individual, group and complex organizational settings will be used. Different leadership styles and approaches and their impact on organizational behavior will be studied also. Prerequisites: BSA 206 and 305 and PSY 110 or 120 or SOC 101.
- 343 Intermediate Accounting I (3)**  
A presentation of the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements, and the proper uses that can be made of financial data. Prerequisite: BSA 221.
- 344 Intermediate Accounting II (3)**  
A continuation of the analysis of the basic assumptions that underlie modern accounting in relation to the principles, procedures, and methods that are applied in the preparation of financial statements, and the proper uses that can be made of financial data. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 345 Intermediate Accounting III (3)**  
A continuation of BSA 343 and BSA 344 with emphasis on special corporation accounting problems, accounting requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission, international operations. Includes a review of historical and current accounting literature. Prerequisites: BSA 343, 344.
- 347 Personal Finance (3)**  
A presentation of the principles and techniques that an individual can use to manage income and assets to achieve personal goals. Major areas of study include the development of personal financial goals and plans, the management of purchases, the use of credit, and planning for retirement.

- 349 Buyer Behavior and Integrated Marketing Communications (3)**  
A study of the purchasing behavior of organizational buyers and consumers and how this behavior serves as a basis for advertising and other promotional activities. Prerequisite: BSA 310. Prerequisites or Corequisites: Balance of the common core courses and BSA 206, or permission of instructor.
- 352 Sales Management (3)**  
A study of effective techniques of selling, efficient use of time, and the management of personnel and activities within a sales territory to accomplish sales objectives. Prerequisite: BSA 310. Prerequisites or Corequisites: Balance of the common core courses and BSA 206, or permission of instructor.
- 353 Entrepreneurship (3)**  
The nature, selection, planning, organization, operation, and harvesting of new business ventures. Case study learning approach is emphasized. Prerequisite: BSA 305 and 324 and permission of instructor.
- 354 Human Resources Management (3)**  
A study of employer-employee relationships in business and industry, including personnel policies and methods, selection, placement, training and promotion of employees, and recent trends in employment practices. Prerequisite: Junior standing or permission of department chair.
- 359 Marketing Research and Planning (3)**  
A study of the tools and techniques for obtaining information about buyers and markets and how this information is used to prepare a comprehensive market plan. Prerequisite: BSA 310. Prerequisite or Corequisite: Balance of the common core courses or permission of instructor.
- 366 Production and Operations Management (3)**  
A study of the methods for planning, scheduling, operating and controlling the production process in both service and manufacturing environments. The behavioral aspects of productivity are considered, but the focus of the course is on productivity as it relates to production and operations management. Topics include productivity measurements, productivity ratios, forecasting, resource planning and allocation, facilities location and design, job design and measurement, production planning and scheduling, quality control and inventory systems. Students will learn to solve problems using operations research models, such as PERT, queuing theory, linear programming applications and transportation cost optimization. Prerequisite: CSS 203 and BSA 305.
- 370 Principles of Finance (3)**  
This course is a basic study of managerial planning and control systems. Topics include: analysis of financial statements, risk and return, time value of money and valuation, capital budgeting, cost of capital, leverage, and dividend policy. Prerequisites: CSS 203, BSA 221 and 222.
- 371 Intermediate Finance (3)**  
This course will review and extend the concepts covered in BSA 370. A corporate analysis project will be used to integrate the concepts taught in the course. Long-term and short-term finance decisions will be discussed as well as special financial topics. Prerequisite: BSA 370.
- 372 Money and Banking (3)**  
The purpose of this course is to examine financial pricing, institutions, and markets. In addition, the roles of money and credit, monetary theory and monetary policy will be discussed in the context of domestic and global financial systems.

- 373 International Financial Management (3)**  
This course will examine the global issues of finance, monetary unions, exchanges, and banking. Basic theories and risks for the MNC's will be discussed, as well as global long-term and short-term asset-liability management.
- 384 Business Communications in the New Electronic Era (3)**  
This is both a theory- and skills-based survey and analysis course involving the practices of communication. The focus is on writing for interpersonal, group, and organizational communication, including corporate correspondence – both traditional and electronic. Students will be introduced to effective oral and listening skills, nonverbal communications behavior, electronic communications, the use of a supplemental online course, and “on the job” experiences through real-world exercises.
- 400 Accounting Information Systems (3)**  
A study of the organization and use of accounting information systems. Emphasis is on the analysis and design of accounting systems in business entities. Course also enables the student to develop an understanding of the relationships between computer hardware and software. Prerequisites: Senior status and completion of CSS 113, BSA 325, 343.
- 402 Quantitative Decision Making (3)**  
An analysis of problems, quantification of data, and presentation of results, using the more advanced quantitative techniques for decision making. Included are quantitative model building, linear programming, game theory, and simulation. Prerequisites: CSS 203 and ECO 201.
- 416 Taxation of Corporations and Other Business Entities (3)**  
Introduction to corporations, partnerships and other business entities. Primary content includes formation, operation and liquidation of corporations, S corporations and partnerships. Also covers compliance and tax planning topics for corporations, partnerships and other entities.
- 420 Auditing (3)**  
A study of auditing theory and practice. The student will study auditing standards, procedures, rules of professional conduct, and related materials. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 421 Governmental and Not-for-Profit Accounting (3)**  
An examination of the accounting process peculiar to government agencies--the methods, systems, and procedures involved in appropriating funds from the general budget, encumbered funds, unencumbered funds, etc., and the preparation of financial statements of governmental units. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 422 Advanced Accounting (3)**  
An application of the fundamentals of accounting to complex situations ranging from partnership organization and operation, liquidation and joint ventures to consolidated financial statements, segment reporting, bankruptcy and corporate reorganization. Prerequisite: BSA 343.
- 425 Certified Public Accountant Problems (3)**  
A review of the general and specialized accounting problems and related fields which constitute the subject matter of the CPA examination; specifically, practical problems, auditing, business law, and accounting theory. Prerequisites: Senior status and permission of instructor.
- 427 Auditing II (3)**  
This course continues Auditing I by applying the concepts and procedures used in the audit process. This is accomplished by the writing of audit programs and reports and oral presentation of the programs and reports.

- 429 Accounting Theory and Problems (3)**  
A critical examination and analysis of accounting principles with emphasis on the determination of cost, income, valuation, and statement presentation. Prerequisites: Senior status and permission of instructor.
- 434 Business Law (3)**  
A study of the fundamentals of legal applications in the framework of business, laws of contracts, negotiable instruments, property, agency, and bankruptcy.
- 438 Managing Global Marketing Strategies (3)**  
A study of the marketing manager's strategic thinking that focuses on consumer preferences, competition, and achieving a global differential advantage. This study will be done at the strategic business unit level (SBU). Also, it includes the important role marketing executives play in the development of corporate business strategies. The case study approach will be utilized and this course should be taken prior to BSA 444. Prerequisites: BSA 222, 305 and all marketing courses or permission of instructor.
- 444 Management Strategy (3)**  
A study of the application of business problem solving and decision making across the functional areas of business. Case studies and business simulations are used to explore the sources and varieties of complex problems confronting contemporary businesses. The focus of this course is on the business entity in its various environments. Prerequisites: Common core courses and senior status or permission of instructor.
- 445 Seminar in Managerial Skills Development (3)**  
A development of skills in the informational, decisional, and interpersonal roles of management. The student develops, then demonstrates, competency in each area through oral presentation and coaching. The focus of this course is on personal management skills and abilities. Prerequisite: Senior status and BSA 305, 326 and permission of instructor.
- 447 Labor Relations (3)**  
A comparison of the philosophies of unionism and the firm. Includes a study of legislation, labor problems, and collective bargaining. Alternate years.
- 449 Internship (1-12)**  
An opportunity to integrate the knowledge and skills gained in the classroom with an actual work environment experience. For each credit hour earned, the student spends a minimum of 30 hours of approved work experience with a cooperating organization. Each student develops, in cooperation with his instructor and work-place supervisor, a learning contract for the work experience and for the academic project associated with this course. Available with permission of instructor and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average.
- 474 Commercial Bank Management (3)**  
This course provides a comprehensive examination of the U.S. banking system, which includes a focus on the financial services sector. Topics shall include ALM techniques and hedging, managing investment portfolios and sources of funds for banks and financial institutions, lending policies, and the future outlooks for the banking/financial industry. Prerequisites: BSA 371 and 372.
- 475 Investment Analysis and Portfolio Management (3)**  
This course will examine the basics of the investment field and the securities market. Fixed income instruments, security analysis, derivatives, portfolio theory, and investment management strategy will be the focus of the course. Prerequisite: BSA 371.



- 476 Derivatives and Risk Management (3)**  
This course will discuss the structure of option markets, option pricing models and basic option strategies. Other topics will include forwards, futures, swaps, interest rate instruments, and financial risk management. Prerequisite: BSA371.
- 480 International Business (3)**  
An introduction to the global aspects of international business. This course integrates the basic concepts and skills of global finance, marketing, operations, trade, and management in an international environment. Students are expected to consider the impact of environmental issues, including sociological-cultural factors, legal-political factors, economic factors, and the application of various techniques developed to meet these challenges. Prerequisite: CSS 203 and BSA 222. Recommended: BSA 305, BSA 325 and BSA 324.
- 487 Directed Readings and Research in Management (3)**  
A self-directed study in management based on a written proposal and justification submitted by the student. Students will design, conduct and analyze a business research project under the supervision of the business faculty. Prerequisite: Junior or senior status and permission of instructor.
- 488 Directed Readings and Research in Marketing (3)**  
A self-directed study in marketing based on a written proposal and justification submitted by the student. Students will design, conduct and analyze a business research project under the supervision of the business faculty. Prerequisite: Junior or senior status and permission of instructor.
- 489 Directed Readings and Research in Accounting (3)**  
A self-directed study in accounting based on a written proposal and justification submitted by the student. Students will design, conduct and analyze a business research project under the supervision of the business faculty. Prerequisite: Junior or senior status and permission of instructor.
- 492 Federal Taxation and Financial Planning (3)**  
A study of the tax consequences that attach to many common business transactions. The course demonstrates how different tax liabilities may occur to nearly identical economic events. It covers the basic rules governing tax law by constantly emphasizing practical results. Prerequisite: Permission of instructor.

---

---

# CHEMISTRY (CH)

---

---

Dr. Michael Sypes

The science of chemistry is a central component of modern science education. A major in chemistry with sound selective courses will prepare the student in a variety of fields, such as molecular biology and biotechnology, chemistry, environmental science, medicine, pharmacy, and physiology.

The goal of this department is to educate students to be competent in their chosen careers. Our mission is to provide educational opportunities that are challenging and reflect the current state of knowledge in the field. In the past, our graduates have been successful in graduate schools and in professional schools, and have found jobs in industrial laboratories and in the teaching field.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Chemistry:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab.....	4
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry .....	4
CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II.....	6
CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II.....	2
CH 350, 352, Physical Chemistry I, II.....	6
CH 351, 353, Physical Chemistry Lab I, II.....	2
CH 401, Biochemistry.....	4
CH 460, Senior Seminar .....	2
CH Elective (Choose from CH 310, CH 320, CH 340, or CH 360).....	4
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II.....	6
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II.....	8
	Total 56

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Chemistry

Freshman Year:

CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II  
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab  
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry  
CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry I and Lab  
CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry II and Lab

Junior Year:

PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II  
CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab  
CH 352, 353, Physical Chemistry II and Lab

Senior Year:

- CH 401, Biochemistry
- CH Elective
- CH 460, Senior Seminar

## Requirements for a Major in Chemistry with a

### Teaching License:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II.....	8
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab.....	4
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry .....	4
CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II.....	6
CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II.....	2
CH 350, 352, Physical Chemistry I, II.....	6
CH 351, 353, Physical Chemistry Lab I, II.....	2
CH 460, Senior Seminar .....	2
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II.....	6
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II.....	8
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
	Total 52

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met to be recommended for a teaching license in Chemistry are explained in detail on page 115.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Chemistry with a Teaching

#### License

Freshman Year:

- BIO 101, Introduction to Biology
- CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II
- MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

Sophomore Year:

- CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab
- CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry
- CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry I and Lab
- CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry II and Lab
- ED 290, Foundations of Education
- HIS 201 or 202, American History I or II
- PSY 205, Developmental Psychology

Junior Year:

- PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II
- CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab
- CH 352, 353, Physical Chemistry II and Lab
- ED 322, Educational Psychology
- ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development
- ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum
- ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary Education
- PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
- HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Senior Year:

- CH 460, Seminar
- ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education
- ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary Education/PK-12
- PE Fitness Course

## Minor

Students electing a minor in Chemistry must complete CH 101, 102, 201, 202, and 7 or 8 semester hours from the following: CH 260, and 300-level Chemistry courses for a total of 19 to 20 semester hours.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Biology/Chemistry

The Biology/Chemistry major adds the biology component to the chemistry component and is recommended for students in pre-med and for those considering graduate study in the health sciences.

The student who wishes to major in Biology/Chemistry must complete the General Education requirements of the University and the following 56 semester hours in Biology and Chemistry.

### Requirements for a Major in Biology/Chemistry:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology.....	4
Biology Electives (select from 204, 205, 301, 302, 330) .....	12
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II .....	8
CH 201, 202, Quantitative analysis and Lab.....	4
CH 301, 302, Organic Chemistry I, II.....	6
CH 303, 304, Organic Chemistry Lab I, II.....	2
CH 350, Physical Chemistry I.....	3
CH 351, Physical Chemistry I Lab.....	1
CH 401, Biochemistry.....	4
PSC 201, 202, General College Physics I, II.....	8
	<u>Total 56</u>

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

### Biology/Chemistry

#### Freshman Year:

CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II  
BIO 102, General Botany  
BIO 103, General Zoology

#### Sophomore Year:

CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab  
BIO Elective  
PSC 201,202, General College Physics I, II

#### Junior Year:

CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry and Lab  
CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry and Lab  
BIO Elective

#### Senior Year:

CH 350, 351, Physical Chemistry I and Lab  
CH 401, Biochemistry  
BIO Elective

## Courses of Instruction

### **101, 102 General Chemistry I, II (4,4)**

A study of the fundamental laws and concepts of chemistry with emphasis on modern atomic theory, solution and equilibrium principles, descriptive chemistry, and how these concepts relate to everyday phenomena. Student should have high school chemistry background or be enrolled in MTH 103 or higher.

### **201 Quantitative Analysis (2)**

A study of the theories and techniques of analytical chemistry. The study includes classical techniques such as volumetric analysis and instrumental techniques such as potentiometric and spectrophotometric procedures. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Corequisite: CH 202.

### **202 Quantitative Analysis Laboratory (2)**

A laboratory study of applications of the principles of gravimetric, volumetric, chromatographic, potentiometric and spectrophotometric analysis of unknown samples. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Corequisite: CH 201.

### **206 Biological Chemistry (4)**

An introduction to organic and biochemistry for environmental sciences. Lectures and laboratory experiments dealing with the simple organic to the complex biomolecules of living systems; their properties, synthesis, and reactions. The factors that control chemical processes are related to material conversion and energy extraction and are modified by environmental changes. The influence of environmental factors will be emphasized. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Alternate years or on demand.

### **260 Inorganic Chemistry (4)**

An introduction to modern theories of inorganic reactions, bonding, and structures as well as the classical approaches. Laboratory work will accompany lectures. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Alternate years or on demand.

- 301 Organic Chemistry I (3)**  
A study of organic chemistry from the functional group concept. Each functional group will be studied from the aspect of reactions, synthesis, nomenclature, biological impact, and usefulness to people. This course will be concerned primarily with the chemistry of bonding. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Corequisite: CH 303.
- 302 Organic Chemistry II (3)**  
A study of the remaining organic functional groups (alcohols, ethers, acids, etc.). Special topics such as drugs will be covered. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 301. Corequisite: CH 304.
- 303 Organic Chemistry I Laboratory (1)**  
A laboratory study of the separation, purification and identification of organic molecules. Organic synthesis will also be introduced. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Corequisite: CH 301.
- 304 Organic Chemistry II Laboratory (1)**  
An emphasis of the organic synthesis of various kinds of organic compounds (alcohols, ketones, azo, dyes, etc.). The compounds synthesized will be routinely analyzed by gas chromatography and infrared spectroscopy. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 301, 303. Corequisite: CH 302.
- 310 Polymer Chemistry (4)**  
A brief introduction to the chemistry of polymers: basic concepts, classification, structure, and properties. Topics include kinetics and mechanism of polymerization reactions, stereo chemistry, crystallinity, cross linking, polymer solutions, molar mass, thermal and mechanical properties and the applications of polymer chemistry. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 301, 302.
- 320 Instrumental Analysis (4)**  
A study of instrumentation principles and laboratory methods, including chromatographic methods of gas phase, liquid phase, thin layer and/or column method. Spectroscopic methods of NMR, UV, visible, and IR. Electrometric methods of titration and polarography, etc. Prerequisites: CH 201, 202. Alternate years.
- 340 Forensic Chemistry (4)**  
A review of the historical development of forensic science philosophies and practices. Students study a wide range of forensic techniques, describe the developing state of the art, and reflect on the changing role of forensic science in the administration of justice. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102.
- 350 Physical Chemistry I (3)**  
A study of the theoretical aspects of physical phenomena in chemistry. Topics include properties of gas, thermo-dynamics equilibria, kinetics, and electrochemistry. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102. Corequisite: CH 351. Alternate years.
- 351 Physical Chemistry I Laboratory (1)**  
A laboratory study of experimental work on viscosity, density, conductance, kinetics, etc. The writing of formal laboratory reports is emphasized. Corequisite: CH 350. Alternate years.
- 352 Physical Chemistry II (3)**  
A study of topics including quantum chemistry, atomic, molecular structure and chemical bondings, spectra of atoms and molecules, statistical thermodynamics, surface and nuclear chemistry. Prerequisite: CH 350. Corequisite: CH 353. Alternate years.
- 353 Physical Chemistry II Laboratory (1)**  
A laboratory analysis of experiments to illustrate and supplement CH 352. Corequisite: CH 352. Alternate years.

- 360 Computational Chemistry (4)**  
A very brief and nonmathematical introduction to molecular mechanics and semi-empirical and *ab initio* molecular orbital methods. Students use graphics-based software to calculate equilibrium, transition-state geometries, reaction thermo-chemistry, and kinetics. Molecular modeling is used to elucidate molecular structures and chemical reactivity and selectivity. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 350, 352.
- 401 Biochemistry (4)**  
A study of the relationship between biology and organic chemistry. Topics include biomolecules (synthesis, structure, and function), intermediary metabolism, and the function of cell components. Laboratory work will accompany lectures. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 301, 302, BIO 102, 103.
- 417 Water Quality Assessment (Same as ENS 417) (4)**  
A course that introduces water quality testing and assessment. Commonly used testing methods and instrumentation provide a range of skills that may be used in the classroom and in the field. Topics include EPA-approved sampling and data collection techniques, instrument calibration and operation, environmental public policy issues, and the use of spreadsheets for data compilation. Aquatic environments will be monitored on a regular basis. No prerequisites.
- 460 Seminar (2)**  
A study of selected topics on recent advances in the field or on research done by the student. Each student will prepare and present one or more reports. Open discussion by all students will follow. Prerequisite: Junior or senior status. Alternate years.

---

---

# COMPUTER AND INFORMATION SCIENCE (CSS)

---

---

Dr. Donald T. Ethington  
Mr. Steven R. Lemery  
Dr. Chin-Chyuan Tai

Ms. Tonja Hudson  
Ms. Susan Osborne  
Dr. Gary A. Tucker, *Chair*

Averett offers Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Science degrees in two majors, Computer Science and Computer Information Systems. In addition, Averett offers minors in Computer Science and in Computer Information Systems to complement any major.

The purposes of courses in this department are to train students in the techniques, theory, and applications of computer science and information systems as well as in specific programming languages and computer systems. The two majors give students sufficient training to pursue any of the following:

1. A career in the public or private sector in a computer-related position.
2. Additional education at the graduate level in the areas of computer science, business, management information systems, and other quantitative fields.

The Computer Science Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, abundant and modern computer facilities and laboratories, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Computer Science:

In addition to the General Education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C++.....	4
CSS 333, Data Structures .....	3
CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I .....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets.....	3
CSS 381, Architecture and Assembly Language .....	3
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation .....	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level.....	3
MTH160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
MTH 201, 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III .....	9
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics .....	3
MTH Elective at the 300-400 level .....	<u>3</u>
	Total 48

A student without previous computer experience would normally be expected to begin with CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.

Suggested Electives: other computer science courses, courses in all areas of the sciences, mathematics, accounting and other business courses, and economics.



## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Computer Science

### Freshman Year:

CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I  
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II  
MTH 201, 202, Calculus, I, II  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

### Sophomore Year:

CSS 231, Programming in C++  
CSS 331, Data Structures  
MTH 301, Calculus III  
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics

### Junior Year:

CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I  
CSS 372, Networks and Internets  
MTH Elective at 300-400 level

### Senior Year:

CSS 381, Programming in Assembly and Machine Language  
CSS 411, Modeling and Simulation  
CSS Elective at 300-400 level

## Minor in Computer Science

The department offers a minor for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. The following courses are required for the minor in Computer Science:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212 Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C+.....	4
CSS Electives (2) at the 300-400 level.....	6
Total	21

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Requirements for a Major in Computer Information Systems

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
CSS 114, Web Authoring and Office Applications.....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 271, Topics in Operating Systems.....	3
CSS 351, System Administration.....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets.....	3
CSS 375, Principles of Databases .....	3
CSS401, Project in Computer Science .....	1
CSS Elective at 200 – 400 level.....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I.....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making.....	3
BSA 434, Business Law.....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
MTH 171, Applied Calculus <b>or</b> MTH 201 Calculus I.....	<u>3</u>
Total	48

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Computer Information Systems**

Freshman Year:

- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software
- MTH 171, Applied Calculus
- CSS 114, Web Authoring and Office Applications
- MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

Sophomore Year:

- CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I
- CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II
- BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I
- BSA 305, Principles of Management

Junior Year:

- CSS 271, Topics in Operating Systems
- CSS 372, Networks and Internets
- CSS elective 200-400 level
- BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making

Senior Year:

- CSS 351, System Administration
- BSA 434, Business Law
- CSS 375, Principles of Databases

**Minor in Computer Information Systems**

The following courses are required for a minor in **Computer Information Systems**:

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II.....	4
CSS 305, Concepts of Information Systems.....	3
CSS 361, Topics in Computer Science I.....	3
CSS 372, Networks and Internets.....	3
CSS 445, Internship.....	<u>3</u>
Total	23

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.



- 212 Introduction to Programming II (4)**  
A continuation of CSS 211 emphasizing advanced programming techniques and theory. Topics include graphics, sorting, accessing database files, object linking and embedding, dynamic link libraries, and dynamic lists. Prerequisite: CSS 211.
- 231 Programming in C++ (4)**  
An extensive study of object-oriented programming using the C++ language. In addition to fundamentals of programming in C++, topics include pointers, linked lists, classes and data abstraction, and recursion. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 235 Programming in Java (4)**  
An extensive study of object-oriented programming using the Java language. In addition to the fundamentals of Java, topics include programming for the web, designing user interfaces, and client/server programming.
- 251 Introduction to COBOL Programming (4)**  
A first course in computer programming using the COBOL language. In addition to designing, coding, and debugging programs, topics include loops, branches, lists, sorts, searches, and structured programming. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 271 Topics in Operating Systems (3)**  
Installation, use, and structure of modern operating systems. Operating systems covered include operating systems in the Windows and UNIX families. Topics include kernel structure, driver structure, command line interfaces, memory management, file systems, and virtual machines. Prerequisites: CSS 211 or higher.
- 305 Concepts of Information Systems (3)**  
A course designed to cover the basics of computer information systems, including transaction processing, decision support, and management information systems. Other topics include hardware and data storage options, software applications, databases, user support, networks and the Internet, security, the systems development life cycle, and social and ethical issues in the computer industry. Prerequisites: CSS 113, 211.
- 333 Data Structures (3)**  
A study of advanced concepts in the area of data structures. Topics include trees, lists, files, stacks, queues, heaps, program correctness, complexity analysis, and algorithmic design. Prerequisite: CSS 231 or equivalent. Alternate years.
- 351 System Administration (3)**  
Maintenance, setup, and troubleshooting issues for servers and networks. Server operating systems will include Windows and UNIX families. Topics include file services, web services, print services, database services, and client setup. Prerequisite: CSS 211 or higher.
- 361, 362 Topics in Computer Science I, II (3,3)**  
An advanced study of selected topics in computer science such as operating systems, information systems, data base management systems, algorithms, systems design, artificial intelligence, networks and communications, and digital electronics. Prerequisite: CSS 212 or 251. Alternate years.
- 372 Networks and Internets (3)**  
A study of physical and logical aspects of local and wide area networks. Topics include the OSI model, network topologies, communication protocols, media, hardware, and issues of network administration. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or equivalent. Alternate years.

- 375 Principles of Databases (3)**  
A study of the design of databases, focusing on relational database design. Topics include data modeling, normalization, queries, SQL syntax, constraints, security and recovery, and large-scale databases. Hierarchical, Network, and Object-Oriented designs are also introduced. Prerequisite: CSS 113 or 211.
- 381 Architecture and Assembly Language (3)**  
An introduction to programming in assembler and machine language. Topics include register manipulations, addressing techniques, interrupt routines, string processing, binary arithmetic, bit manipulations, and internal data storage such as hexadecimal and two's complement. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or 231. Alternate years.
- 401 Project in Computer Science (1)**  
A capstone experience for students to tie together topics that extend across courses. The student will prepare a paper and an oral presentation. Topics that may be pursued include topics in the history of computing, societal effects of information technology, and the writing of user manuals for software. This course is designed for students to work independently. Prerequisite: Senior status.
- 411 Modeling and Simulation (3)**  
A capstone course in modeling and simulation using previously studied languages and including at least one major programming project. Topics include a survey of simulations, iterated function systems, cellular automata, predator-prey models, random number generation, and random distributions and applications. Prerequisites: CSS 212 or 231; MTH 301 or consent of instructor. Alternate years.
- 445 Internship (1-6)**  
A supervised work experience that requires the student to apply computer skills in a professional environment. For each credit hour earned, the student spends a minimum of 30 hours of approved work experience with a cooperating organization. Graded on a Pass/Fail basis only. Prerequisite: Permission of instructor and a 2.0 cumulative grade point average.

---

---

## **CRIMINAL JUSTICE (CRJ)**

---

---

Dr. Rebecca L. Clark  
Dr. Laura L. Hartman  
Dr. Steven Wray, *Chair*

Averett offers a four-year Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice designed to give the student a broad-based professional preparation for his/her chosen career.

Students who have completed an Associate's Degree from another accredited college may choose to pursue a Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice in a 2+2 program. The 60 hours required for these degrees are designed to give the student a well-balanced educational experience and to provide professional development for his/her chosen career. Descriptions for Sociology courses may be found in the Sociology section of this catalog (page 210).

A major in Sociology/Criminal Justice allows students to prepare for entry into any of hundreds of jobs available today. The curriculum provides an excellent background for becoming a police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, special agent for the FBI and other agencies.

Students examine the area of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

A four-year program in Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice is also available to Averett students. This degree program is designed to qualify students for direct entry into careers in Criminal Justice that require pilot skills. Such careers include drug enforcement agents, government criminal justice agencies and F.A.A. Investigators. The outline of the program requirements is found in the Aeronautics section of this catalog, beginning on page 60. Descriptions of the courses in Aeronautics begin on page 60 of this catalog; descriptions of the Sociology courses are found in the Sociology section of this catalog, beginning on 210.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

### **Sociology/Criminal Justice -- 4-year Program**

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice as a four-year program at Averett University requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Criminal Justice is a growth area in the contemporary job market. Averett's program allows students to prepare themselves for entry into any of hundreds of criminal justice occupations available today. The curriculum provides excellent background for becoming a police officer, crime scene investigator, probation and parole officer, special agent for the F.B.I. and other agencies. The curriculum in Criminal Justice offers the opportunity to examine the area of criminal law, prisons, court processes and procedures, the Constitution, and police procedures. An internship in one of the criminal justice agencies or departments allows students to experience for themselves what professionals do in these occupations.

## Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal Justice

### (4-year program):

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
SOC 216, Criminology <b>or</b> CRJ 301, Criminal Justice .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
Sociology or Criminal Justice electives .....	<u>21</u>
Total	36

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 488 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Sociology/Criminal

#### Justice (4-year program)

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

SOC 216, Criminology **or** CRJ 301, Criminal Justice  
 SOC or CRJ Elective  
 SOC or CRJ Elective  
 MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

Junior Year:

CRJ 387, Criminal Law  
 SOC or CRJ Elective  
 SOC or CRJ Elective

Senior Year:

SOC or CRJ Elective  
 SOC or CRJ Elective  
 SOC or CRJ Elective  
 SOC 470, Research Methods

### Sociology/Criminal Justice (2+2 program)

The Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice may be elected by students who have completed an associate's degree from another accredited college prior to enrolling at Averett. The program in Sociology/Criminal Justice is designed for the student who wishes to pursue a career in criminal justice, law enforcement, or criminal law. A student electing this option must complete the requirements listed below either through transfer credit or courses taken at Averett. Students must have at least 60 senior college hours and at least 123 total hours in order to graduate. The final 33 hours must be completed at Averett.

## Requirements for a Major in Sociology/Criminal

### Justice (2+2 program):

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
MTH 103, Principles of Mathematics .....	3
Fine Arts (any which meet General Education requirements).....	6
REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament Literature <b>or</b>	
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament Literature.....	3
Religion or Philosophy Elective.....	3
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics .....	3
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law.....	3
CRJ 440, Senior Seminar <b>or</b> CRJ 445, Internship <b>or</b> CRJ/SOC 488, Criminal Procedure .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ or SOC Electives .....	18
Other electives to equal at least 60 senior college hours.....	<u>varies</u>
	Total 60

A Sociology or Criminal Justice Research Project is required. This is a substantial research paper involving original research. CRJ 440, SOC 445, CRJ 445, or CRJ 488 will meet these requirements. Also, an independent study with guidance by a full-time department faculty member with the goal of producing an original quantitative or qualitative research paper will meet this requirement.

### Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice Program

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Aeronautics and Criminal Justice. Specific course requirements for the program may be found in the Aeronautics section of this catalog, [pages 59](#).

### Criminal Justice/Sociology IDEAL Programs

These programs are offered to adult learners and targeted to military, police departments, and prison personnel. As is the case in the IDEAL program generally, the courses are mostly independent studies delivered electronically, with contact hours where practical and feasible.

General Education requirements for a Bachelor of Science Degree with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL); for a Bachelor of Science with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) for Law Enforcement Professionals; and for a Bachelor of Science with a major in Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) for Corrections Professionals:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
Advanced Literature course, 200-level or higher .....	3
Fine Arts (any which meet general education requirements) .....	3
HIS 101-102, History of Western Civilization I, II or World History.....	6
Social Sciences (select from two or more of the following Fields:	
Economics, Criminal Justice, Geography, History, Political Science, Psychology, or Sociology)...	9
Philosophy or Ethics .....	3
Religion (select from the following courses: REL 101, 102, 201, 260, 304, 305, 306, 311, 312, 313, 315, 350).....	3



Mathematics (select from the following courses: MTH 103, 151, 171, 201, 202).....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
Natural/Physical Science (select from the following courses: BIO 101 or any other Biology course for which the prerequisite has been met, CH 101, CH 102, ENS 215, PSC 101, 103, 110, 201, 202, PSY 120).....	<u>4</u>
Total	43

Requirements for a Bachelor of Arts in these fields are the same except that the student is required to take MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics, and no other mathematics course. In addition, the student must complete the intermediate level of proficiency (second year) in any foreign language.

**Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program:**

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
SOC 216, Criminology.....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice.....	3
CRJ 304/SOC 304, Police in America .....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law.....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials .....	3
Electives (select four courses from the following).....	<u>12</u>
CRJ 488, Criminal Procedure	
CRJ 352, Criminal Investigation	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship	
SOC 329/CRJ 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual or PSY 219, Social Psychology	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior	
BSA 305, Principles of Management	
Total	42

**Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program for Law Enforcement Professionals:**

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
SOC 216, Criminology.....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice.....	3
CRJ 304/SOC 304, Police in America .....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law.....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials .....	3
Electives (select four courses from the following).....	<u>12-13</u>
CRJ 488, Criminal Procedure, CRJ 352, Criminal Investigation,	
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship, SOC 329/CRJ 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse,	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family, PSY 200, Effective Behavior,	
BSA 305, Principles of Management, POS 215, American National Government,	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual or PSY 219, Social Psychology	
Total	42-43

**Major Requirements for Criminal Justice/Sociology (IDEAL) Program for Corrections Professionals (officers presently working in the field of corrections):**

In addition to the general education courses listed above, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
SOC 216, Criminology.....	3
SOC 317, American Minorities.....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
CRJ 301, Criminal Justice.....	3
CRJ 303/SOC 303, Community Corrections.....	3
CRJ 340/SOC 340, Juvenile Delinquency and Justice .....	3
CRJ 375/SOC 375, Corrections .....	3
CRJ 387, Criminal Law.....	3
CRJ 407, Courts and Trials .....	3
Electives (select four courses from the following).....	<u>12</u>
CRJ 445, Criminal Justice Internship	
SOC 329/CRJ 329, Drugs and Substance Abuse	
SOC 306, Marriage and the Family	
SOC 309, Society and the Individual or	
PSY 219, Social Psychology	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior	
PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology	
BSA 305, Principles of Management	
	Total 42

**Minor**

Students electing a minor in Criminal Justice must complete 18 semester hours, including CRJ 301 or SOC 216, and 15 hours of Criminal Justice electives.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

**Courses of Instruction**

- 301 Criminal Justice (3)**  
 An overview of the criminal justice system in the United States. Emphasis is placed on the profession of police officer and the problems encountered in crime scene analysis, police discretion, and relationships with the larger society. The workings of the courts are examined with reference to the roles of the attorneys, judges, and defendants. The basic problems of the prison system and possible alternatives are explored. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above.
- 303 Community Corrections (3)**  
 An examination of the different community-based correction alternatives outside of jails and prisons. Emphasis is placed on probation and parole. Also examined are current treatment programs such as electric monitoring, house arrest, day-treatment, boot camp, and fines.
- 304 Police in America (3)**  
 A course that examines the role of the police in American society. Topics include the history of the police, development of different police agencies, police discretion, police administration, police organizations, deadly force, and community policing.

- 329 Drugs and Substance Abuse (Same as SOC 329) (3)**  
An examination of drugs and substance abuse in American society. The student will examine the social, physical, and mental effects that drugs have on the user, as well as the impact they have on the family and society. Major issues include addiction, recovery, treatment, rehabilitation, and relapse prevention.
- 340 Juvenile Delinquency and Justice (Same as SOC 340) (3)**  
An examination of the causes of juvenile delinquency, sociological theory, and the responses of the legal system. The extent of juvenile delinquency, the organization of police, judicial, and correctional response to juvenile offenders, the legal developments in statutory and case law, and the future of this system are examined.
- 352 Criminal Investigation (3)**  
An overview of criminal investigation techniques with an emphasis on crime scene investigation and crime laboratory developments. Recent developments in the field include DNA research, trace physical evidence, fingerprint developments, and specific crime analysis techniques. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above.
- 375 Corrections (Same as SOC 375) (3)**  
A survey of prisons, jails, and correction alternatives in the United States. Topics include federal, state, and local correctional facilities, sentencing, the prison experience, community correctional programs, probation and parole. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 387 Criminal Law (3)**  
An examination of the elements of criminal laws and the defenses associated with them. Specific crimes of murder, burglary, robbery, rape, traffic offenses, larceny, embezzlement, arson, and other crimes are discussed. Basic criminal procedure questions of search and seizure are examined. The new changes and trends in criminal law are discussed.
- 407 Courts and Trials (3)**  
A detailed examination of the courtroom procedures and the roles and responsibilities of the judge, the prosecutor, defendant, and police officer. Topics discussed include the structure of the courts, the steps in prosecution, the trial, and sentencing. Prerequisite: Sophomore status or above.
- 440 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A capstone course for the major. The student will complete a project combining theory, research, and evaluation methods on a selected topic in the major. A portion of the course will be devoted to career development. Prerequisite or corequisite: SOC 470.
- 445 Criminal Justice Internship (3)**  
A supervised work experience in a setting that requires the student to observe and participate in one field of criminal justice. The student uses the knowledge and skills acquired in the classroom and applies them within a criminal justice agency. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of instructor.
- 488 Criminal Procedure (3)**  
A course that examines the main criminal procedure law and search and seizure issues in modern criminal justice. The major procedures and laws that relate to upholding the criminal justice system, including the U. S. Constitution and federal and state legislation are examined. Court cases and legal analysis are applied to the reading of appellate court decisions.

---

---

# ECONOMICS (ECO)

---

---

Dr. Chin-Chyuan Tai

Courses in Economics are required by several departments as part of their majors. No major or minor is available in Economics.

## Courses of Instruction

**201 Principles of Microeconomics (3)**

A study of demand and supply analysis, market demand and elasticity, production theory, cost theory, market structures, business decision on the price and output, firms and their financing, shortcomings and remedies of market mechanism, regulation, antitrust policy, factor income, and income distribution.

**202 Principles of Macroeconomics (3)**

A study of topics such as basic functions of economics system, scarcity and choice, supply and demand, inflation and unemployment, national income accounting, demand side equilibrium, supply side equilibrium and fiscal policy, money and banking, monetary policy, budget deficit and national debt, international trade, productivity problems, income distribution, and economic growth.

**210 Consumer Economics (3)**

A course designed as a practical elective which covers, in part, the consumer's function and responsibilities in the economy, budgets, consumer credit, business influence on consumers, tips on better buying, insurance, investments and aids for consumers. Not open to first year students. Alternate years.

**300 Money and Banking (3)**

An analysis of our monetary structure, including a consideration of the origin, nature, and use of money and credit; the functions of commercial and non-commercial banking institutions; the organization, administration, and control of the Federal Reserve System. Prerequisite: ECO 202. Alternate years.

---

---

## EDUCATION (ED)

---

---

Dr. Pamela B. Riedel  
Dr. Sue F. Rogers  
Dr. Lynn Wolf, *Chair*

The goal of the Department of Education at Averett University is to graduate proficient teachers who pursue excellence through continuous learning and self-improvement. Our success is reflected in the fact that we consistently place nearly 100% of our graduates in teaching positions.

Averett's Department of Education has formed partnerships with nine regional school divisions where pre-service teachers complete field-based practica and graduate students are employed. Formalized partnerships exist within the region between Averett and the Danville Public Schools, Pittsylvania County Public Schools and Henry County Public Schools. The partnerships enhance departmental curriculum offerings and ensure that students have the best opportunities available for hands-on experience.

Virginia's Department of Education has approved Averett University's teacher education programs. Professional education at Averett University includes both undergraduate and graduate programs. (For details on the graduate program, see [The Catamount](#).) The undergraduate component provides programs leading to initial licensure in elementary, secondary, and PK-12 education. Certification is available in Art (PK-12), Biology (6-12), Chemistry (6-12), English (6-12), English/Theatre (6-12), Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education (PK-12), History and Social Science (6-12), Mathematics (6-12), and Theatre (PK-12). Add-on endorsements may be gained in Journalism, Speech Communication, and Computer Science. Students may also choose to minor in Special Education. Through the M.Ed. program, students may also be certified as a learning disabilities teacher and a reading specialist; in addition, students who have a baccalaureate degree but no teacher certification can seek licensure through the Master of Arts in Teaching program (see [The Catamount](#)).

Students wishing a teaching license must be admitted to the program of professional studies in education (Teacher Education Program). Students seeking such admission must:

- have a minimum 2.50 grade point average.
- attain a score at or above the State of Virginia cutoff score on all the Praxis I tests.
- never have been convicted of a felony or had a teaching license revoked in any state.
- satisfy other requirements for admission to the program.
- be approved by the Teacher Education Committee.

Admission to professional studies in education may not be sought until the student has successfully completed a minimum of 30 semester hours of college study with a minimum of 12 semester hours at Averett. Admission procedures are undertaken during the semester when the student is enrolled in ED 290, Foundations of Education, and must be completed by the time 15 additional semester hours have been taken. Admission to Student Teaching may be sought when the student is enrolled in the appropriate course, ED 401 (for elementary, PK-6 students) or ED 474 (for secondary or PK-12 students), and a passing score on Praxis II has been achieved and is on record in the Education Department

After admission to the Teacher Education Program, the student must maintain a minimum 2.50 grade point average and receive no grade below a C in professional courses in order to retain good standing in the program. A 2.50 grade point average is required for enrollment in ED 401 and 406 (the instruction courses) and for placement in student teaching.

In order to complete the program and graduate, each student seeking elementary, secondary, or PK-12 certification is required to take Praxis Examinations and score at or above any cutoff scores

established by the State Board of Education. Scores on both the Praxis Examinations and the appropriate specialty area examination(s) must be reported to Averett University, code number 5017. A student's passing scores for Praxis I and II must be on file before registering for student teaching. For the 2002-2003 academic year, the institutional pass rates for these exams were: PPST Reading, 80%; CBT Reading, 93%; CBT Writing, 80%; CBT Mathematics, 100%. The aggregate pass rate for the basic test was 86%. The overall aggregate pass rate was 88.25%. All students seeking certification must take the Virginia Communication and Literacy Assessment. Students seeking elementary certification must also take the Virginia Reading Assessment.

Programs in professional education seek to:

- \* develop in each candidate a sense of the professional character of teaching and of the importance and challenge of this profession.
- \* emphasize intensive study in the academic disciplines which provide the foundation for the subjects and the Virginia Standards of Learning the candidate will teach in the school setting and provide a thorough understanding of the setting of those subject matter areas in the school curriculum.
- \* assist the candidate in gaining an understanding of psychological growth and development, the process of human learning, and the dynamics of human interaction as these are related to the process of teaching.
- \* assist the candidate in gaining a realistic concept of the role of the teacher, the student, and subject matter in the teaching-learning process, with emphasis on the function of the teacher in classroom management.
- \* provide opportunity for direct experience in the classroom setting through observation, field experience, and directed teaching.
- \* assist the candidate in the development of a realistic philosophy of education, an understanding of the role of the school in contemporary society, and an understanding of the evolution of education in this country.
- \* address legal aspects, current trends and future issues in education.

Completion of the elementary education program leads to licensure to teach in grades PK-6. Other programs listed above, excluding those designated PK-12, lead to licensure to teach in grades 6-12.

Publications prepared by the Department of Education of the University should be consulted closely in order to insure that all of the requirements for teacher licensure have been included in a student's plan of study.

Students should be advised that the State Board of Education may alter licensure processes and requirements, thus making changes in Averett's degree programs necessary. The University reserves the right to make such alterations in degree requirements as are necessary to insure graduates of their eligibility for a teaching license.

### **Elementary Education (PK-6) (Liberal Studies with Teaching Certification)**

Averett University students seeking a teaching license at the elementary school level will pursue a dual-disciplinary program leading to a Liberal Studies major. These students will elect either the Bachelor of Science or the Bachelor of Arts degree, depending upon the areas of concentration they choose. All students seeking licensure in Elementary Education (PK-6) must complete the following courses which include the general education requirements.

## Core Requirements for Students Seeking a Teaching

### License in Elementary Education (PK-6)

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors or a higher level literature course.....	3
ENG 470, Literature for Children .....	3
Fine Arts--Two courses from the following:.....	6
ART 100, the Visual Arts; ART 201, Art History: Ancient to Medieval;	
ART 205, Art History: Medieval through Renaissance;	
ART 305, Art History: Baroque-Romanticism;	
ART 306, Art History: Realism to Modern;	
ART 405, Non-Western Art; MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature;	
MUS 260, Music History: Renaissance/Baroque;	
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, Modern;	
TH 105, Introduction to Theatre;	
TH 220, History of the Theatre I, TH221, History of the Theatre II	
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century .....	4
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II .....	6
MTH 111, 112, Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II .....	6
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy <b>or</b> PHL 210, Ethics. ....	3
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
PSC 101, Survey of Physical Science .....	4
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology.....	3
REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament Literature <b>or</b>	
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament Literature.....	3
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication <b>or</b> TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
Total	66

### ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR STUDENTS SEEKING THE

#### BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE

	Semester Hours
Foreign Language.....	6-14

Students must pass six semester hours at the 200 level or above. (The courses to be taken will be determined by the placement test results.), or they must complete GRK 101, GRK 102 and HEB 101, HEB 102.

Total 72 - 82

All candidates desiring a teaching license in Elementary Education must complete requirements for Averett University's Liberal Studies degree. This major requires the student to select two areas of concentration from two different departments and to complete a 34-hour concentration in Professional Education. Thus the students electing to be PK-6 teachers must select, in addition to Education, two concentrations from the following departments: English, Foreign Language, History/Social Science, Mathematics/Computer Science, and Natural Science. Averett University requires a minimum of 12 hours to be taken in each concentration, exclusive of general education.

Students who select their two concentrations from Areas I, II and III-A must elect the Bachelor of Arts degree. Those who select any other combination of concentrations may elect either the Bachelor of Arts or the Bachelor of Science degree. Students are reminded that the Bachelor of Arts degree requires completion of the intermediate level of a foreign language.

## AREAS OF CONCENTRATION

### AREA I. ENGLISH

#### English Concentration

	Semester Hours
ENG 202, Major British authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
English Electives (300-400 level) .....	6
Core Requirements (ENG 111, 112, 201 or higher literature course, 470) .....	<u>12</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>21</b>

### AREA II. FOREIGN LANGUAGE (Select either A or B)

#### A. French Concentration

	Semester Hours
F R 101, 102, Beginning French .....	8
FR 201, 202, Intermediate French.....	6
2 courses above 202 level.....	<u>6</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>20</b>

#### B. Spanish Concentration

	Semester Hours
SPA 101, 102, Elementary Spanish.....	8
SPA 201, 202, Intermediate Spanish.....	6
2 courses above 202 level.....	<u>6</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>20</b>

Placement may result in a reduction of the number of hours required in the concentration. However, at least two semesters of the courses above the 202 level must be completed at Averett.

A student who completes either concentration may fulfill a foreign language minor by the additional completion of two of the 300-level courses in the foreign language.

### AREA III. HISTORY AND SOCIAL SCIENCE (Select either A or B)

#### A. History and Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
History Electives (300-400 level).....	6
POS 215, American National Government .....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government.....	1
POS 380, International Relations .....	3
Core Requirements (HIS 101, 102, 201, 202; POS 131).....	<u>15</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>28</b>



B. Social Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science .....	3
Sociology/Psychology electives 300-400 level .....	6
Core Requirements (HIS 101, 102, 201, 202; POS 131).....	<u>15</u>
	Total 27

**AREA IV. MATHEMATICS AND COMPUTER SCIENCE (Select either A or B)**

A. Mathematics Concentration

	Semester Hours
*MTH 151, Precalculus Mathematics .....	3
MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II .....	6
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics I .....	3
Mathematics Elective, 302 or higher (MTH 311 preferred).....	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111, 112) .....	<u>6</u>
	Total 21

\*Placement test may result in waiver of MTH 151.

B. Computer Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming I.....	4
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS Elective at the 200-400 level.....	3
CSS Elective at the 300-400 level.....	3
Core Requirements (MTH 111, 112, CSS 113) .....	<u>9</u>
	Total 23

**AREA V. NATURAL SCIENCE**

Natural Science Concentration

	Semester Hours
BIO 102, General Botany.....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology.....	4
BIO 203, Genetics <b>or</b>	
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II .....	4-8
BIO 330, General Ecology .....	4
Core Requirements (BIO 101; PSC 101) .....	<u>8</u>
	Total 24-28

**PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR PK-6 CANDIDATES**

	Semester Hours
ED 180, Earth Science/Geography for Educators .....	2
ED 290, Foundations of Education .....	3
ED 322, Educational Psychology (aiding placement included) .....	3
ED 350, Reading and Language Development .....	3
*ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6 .....	2
*ED 401, Instruction in Grades PK-6 .....	3
ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development.....	2
*ED 483, Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6 .....	<u>2</u>
	Total 20

**FIELD EXPERIENCES**

	Semester Hours
ED 351, Field Experiences/Practicum in Reading and Language Development.....	0
*ED 379, Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6 .....	1
ED 444, Practicum in Reading .....	1
*ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6.....	<u>12</u>
	Total 14

\*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence for Education/Related Courses**

**for PK-6**

Freshman Year:

- MTH 111, 112, Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication or TH 300, Public Speaking
- HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century

Sophomore Year:

- ED 180, Earth Science/Geography for Educators
- ED 290, Foundations of Education
- PSY 205, Developmental Psychology
- PSC 101, Survey of Physical Science
- ED 350, Reading and Language Development
- ED 351, Field Experiences in Reading and Language Development
- POS 131, The World of Politics

Junior Year:

- ENG 470, Literature for Children
- PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics
- ED 322, Educational Psychology
- ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Arts
- ED 444, Practicum in Reading
- ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6
- ED 379 Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6
- ED 483, Mathematics and Science in Grades PK-6

Senior Year:

- ED 401, Instruction in Grades PK-6
- ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6

## Minor in Special Education

Students majoring in Liberal Studies and working towards PK-6 licensure may pursue an 18-semester hour minor in Special Education.

### Requirements for a Minor in Special Education:

	Semester Hours
ED 350, Reading and Language Development .....	3
ED 351, Field Practicum .....	0
ED 443, Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Development.....	2
ED 444, Practicum in Reading .....	1
Four of the following: .....	<u>12</u>
ED 384, The Exceptional Student	
ED 461, Characteristics of the Student with Learning Disabilities	
ED 463, Behavior Management of Exceptional Students	
ED 465, Curriculum and Instruction for Students With Learning Disabilities	
ED 467, Psychoeducational Assessment	
	Total 18

## Secondary (6-12) and PK-12 Education

A student who anticipates teaching on the secondary or PK-12 level may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree, depending upon the academic discipline selected as a major. The degree is earned in the subject the student intends to teach. Courses in either secondary or PK-12 education are taken in addition to the requirements of a major program. Programs leading to professional licensure are offered in art (PK-12), biology, chemistry, English, English/Theatre (6-12), history and social science, mathematics, health, physical education and drivers education (PK-12), and theatre arts (PK-12). Computer science, journalism, and speech may be pursued as add-on endorsements.

Persons who wish to teach in disciplines other than those listed should be aware that Averett University cannot provide the directed teaching experiences for such subjects nor is the University authorized to provide the recommendations required by the Virginia Department of Education. Alternative routes to licensure in such instances may be discussed with the Director of Teacher Education.

Students who wish to be recommended for secondary or PK-12 teaching license must complete a major program in an academic discipline of the University and, in addition to that major program, must complete the following requirements.

**CORE REQUIREMENTS FOR STUDENTS SEEKING  
SECONDARY OR PK-12 TEACHING LICENSE**

	Semester Hours
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
English literature course (201 or above) .....	3
Fine Arts to be selected from the following: .....	6
ART 100, The Visual Arts; ART 201, Art History: Ancient to Medieval; ART 205, Medieval to Renaissance; ART 305, Art History: Baroque-Romanticism; ART 306, Art History: Realism to Modern; ART 405, Non-Western Art; MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature; MUS 260, Music History: Renaissance/Baroque; MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Modern; TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre; TH 220, History of the Theatre I; TH 221, History of Theatre II;	
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
HIS 201, United States History I <b>or</b> other United States history.....	3
Laboratory science .....	4-8
(4 semester hours required for B.A. candidates; 8 semester hours required for B.S. candidates)	
Mathematics .....	3-6
(3 semester hours required for B.A. candidates; 6 semester hours required for B.S. candidates)	
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy <b>or</b> PHL 210, Ethics .....	3
Physical Education fitness course .....	2
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology.....	3
REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament Literature <b>or</b>	
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament Literature.....	3
Social Sciences.....	6
Select from two of the following fields: Economics, History, Political Science, Psychology, Sociology	
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication <b>or</b> TH 300, Public Speaking .....	3
Total	55-64

**ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENT FOR STUDENTS SEEKING THE  
BACHELOR OF ARTS DEGREE**

Foreign Language.....	6-14
(Intermediate level of proficiency or one year each of Greek and Hebrew)	
Total	63-78

**PROFESSIONAL COURSES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES**

	Semester Hours
ED 290, Foundations of Education (Observations included) .....	3
ED 322, Educational Psychology (Aiding placement included) .....	3
ED 334, Content Area Reading and Language Development .....	3
*ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum .....	2
*ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	<u>3</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>14</b>

Additional professional course for students seeking a PK-12 license in Art, Theatre, or Health,  
Physical Education and Drivers Education:

*ED 378, Curriculum in Grades PK-6 .....	<u>2</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>16</b>

\*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

**FIELD EXPERIENCES FOR 6-12 AND PK-12 CANDIDATES**

	Semester Hours
*ED 478, Teaching Assistant, Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	1
*ED 489, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education .....	<u>12</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>13</b>

**Additional Field Experience for PK-12 candidates seeking licensure in Art, Theatre, or Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education:**

*ED 379, Teaching Assistant in Grades PK-12 .....	<u>1</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>14</b>

\*Admission to Teacher Education Program required.

REQUIRED COURSES IN THE SUBJECT AREA(S) OF INTENDED LICENSURE ARE LISTED IN THE CATALOG UNDER THE SPECIFIC MAJOR(S). ANY RELATED COURSE REQUIREMENTS ARE LISTED IN THOSE SECTIONS.

**Graduate Programs**

Averett University offers the Master of Education with certification or non-certification tracks. Averett also offers early admission to both programs.

The Master of Education non-certification degree program offers several areas of concentration from which students may choose one. Those interested in continued work in the elementary setting may choose to concentrate in Reading, Special Education, or Curriculum and Instruction. Teachers in the secondary setting may choose to concentrate in one of the core academic subjects or in Special Education.

The Master of Education with Certification degree program is designed for students who have an earned baccalaureate degree from an accredited college/institution in a subject area, but who did not become licensed to teach through their undergraduate program. Students may earn teacher licensure in either grades PK-6 or Secondary Teacher 6-12 or PK-12 while completing the graduate degree.

Secondary MED students concentrating in the core academic areas may complete a degree with 18 graduate hours in certain subject fields. This degree will allow the graduate of these programs to teach Advanced Placement (AP) and dual enrollment courses. Students should check with the director of the Graduate Education Program for subject availability.

**Early Admission to Graduate Studies:** Undergraduate students may enroll in two graduate courses for graduate credit during their senior year. These courses may be applied towards the Master of Education degree program, provided they are earned at Averett University within the time limit specified

in The Catamount. Students must apply and be accepted in the graduate education program as special graduate students in order to take graduate courses.

Interested students should contact their academic advisor and the Director of Teacher Education.

### Field Experiences

Extensive clinical experiences and practica are built into Averett's education programs to facilitate the transition from theory to practice. Various courses provide opportunities for the student to observe, tutor, aid, and do directed teaching in off-campus settings, as well as to tutor children in area schools. Additional information about the various field experiences is provided in the course descriptions.

### Courses of Instruction

#### **180 Earth Science/Geography for Educators (2)**

A course designed to provide future teachers with a sound foundation for understanding the content, process, and skills of earth science and geography. Students will explore earth's cycles and change, including but not limited to: weather; ecosystems; energy relationships; motions as related to seasons, tides, time and phases of the moon; the water cycle; the rock cycle; properties of the earth and the solar system; historical cycles and fossils; the oceans and currents; plate tectonics; weathering and erosion; soil formation; and human impact. In addition, students will explore the shaping of the earth's surface, use maps and other representations to analyze change, track changes in human population and urbanization, and identify various resources and their uses.

#### **290 Foundations of Education (3)**

A course dealing with the historical development, philosophy, structure, social function, legal aspects, financial support, and current problems of American public education. Admissions procedures to studies in professional education will also be undertaken. The student will not be admitted to this course until a minimum of 30 semester hours of college study is successfully completed. This course is a prerequisite for all other courses in education.

#### **310 K-T Reading (3)**

A course that focuses on instruction in the implementation of the K-T Reading Program, a multi-modal approach to the teaching of reading. Class participants will learn the system and will use it to tutor at least one child.

#### **322 Educational Psychology (3)**

A course designed to allow the student to investigate the nature of human learning as it takes place in the school setting and to study approaches for the evaluation of student progress in learning. The student will also give attention to the psychological aspects and implications of classroom management. During this course, the student will serve as a teacher's aide in an area school.

#### **334 Content Reading and Language Development (3)**

This course provides for the study and application of literacy in teaching Virginia's Standards of Learning (SOL) in all content areas. Anticipated topics include development of students' study and reading habits, the appreciation of a variety of literature and techniques to increase reading comprehension. Skills for working with small groups, and gifted and special needs students will be addressed. The class will discuss how technology can be used to address these topics along with practical applications of technology for completion of some course requirements. The course instruction will focus on individual and cooperative group work in both a classroom and computer lab. A 10-hour field placement is required for all students.

- 350 Reading and Language Development (3)**  
A course dealing with the relationship of reading to the other language arts—listening, speaking and writing. Students will examine the principles underlying the teaching of reading using the total language approach. Special attention will be given to the development of the language arts skills as a foundation for the reading skills. Emphasis will be placed on these skills from the readiness stage through the middle grades. Students must enroll also in the field experience section that accompanies this course.
- 351 Field Experiences/Practicum in Reading and Language Development (0)**  
A practicum designed to provide application of theory and research to classroom practice. It allows the preservice teacher opportunities in a supervised setting to implement instruction with an individual student or a small group of students. Corequisite: ED 350. Graded on a Pass/Fail basis.
- 378 Curriculum in Grades PK-6 (2)**  
A course designed to introduce prospective PK-6 educators to the philosophical basis of curriculum development; subject matter content in all disciplines with particular emphasis in social studies and history; current events in curriculum development; and national, state, and local Standards of Learning. Prerequisite: Admission to the Education program. Corequisite: ED 379.
- 379 Teaching Assistant: Grades PK-6 (1)**  
A field experience designed to acquaint prospective teachers with the day-to-day realities of teaching as they observe students and their behavior patterns in both structured and non-structured settings, become acquainted with the diverse levels of achievement within the classroom, learn to evaluate curricular materials and resources, and gain practical experience by assuming a variety of teacher roles. The student will gain practice in instructing the total class, the small group, and the individual during the 40-hour placement in an Elementary setting (grades PK-6). Prerequisite: Admission to the Education program. Corequisite: ED 378. Graded on Pass/Fail basis.
- 384 The Exceptional Student (3)**  
An overview of special education and study of theories, characteristics, and needs of exceptional students. Attention will be given to the historical background and legal aspects of special education, general practices for instructional programming and individual evaluation.
- 401 Instruction in Grades PK-6 (3)**  
A course providing prospective teachers with the opportunity to explore teaching strategies and examine materials appropriate for the child in grades PK-6. Lesson planning, unit planning, micro-teaching, and classroom management strategies will also receive heavy emphasis. This course must be taken during the semester immediately prior to ED 488, Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6. Prerequisites: Admission to the Teacher Education Program and ED 378 and 379.
- 406 Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education (3)**  
A course designed to deal with instructional methods and with procedures for classroom management appropriate for teaching in grades 6-12 and in certain PK-12 programs. This course is part of the student's professional semester. ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary 6-12/PK-12, is taken in the same semester as 406. Prerequisites: Admission to the Teacher Education Program and ED 474 and 478.
- 443 Diagnosis and Application of Reading and Language Arts (2)**  
This course provides pre-service elementary teachers with the basic knowledge of formal and informal literacy assessments and interpretation. Discussion of interpretation will focus on how assessment results can be used in the professional setting and in discussion with parents. Special attention will be given to interpreting scores of exceptional students. A wide range of instructional plans will be discussed. The pre-service teachers will plan appropriate instruction to demonstrate their proficiency in utilizing a variety of strategies for reading vocabulary development and reading fluency. Strategies for incorporating vocabulary development across the curriculum will be emphasized. Students will come to understand the unique needs of students with language difference and delays as well as the role of the family in developing literacy. Technology is utilized throughout the course in a variety of formats; PowerPoint is one program of special emphasis. Prerequisites: ED 350 and 351, passing scores on the reading portion of the Praxis I exam and a 2.5 GPA. Corequisite: ED 444

- 444 Practicum in Reading (1)**  
 This field placement course allows students a tutorial experience where they can use and interpret formal and informal literacy assessments. Pre-service teachers will vary instruction to demonstrate their understanding of student's level of literacy development and needs. Pre-service teachers will tutor a student in area schools, plan instruction, confer with the instructor and others as needed, and write a formal report based on their tutee. This course is graded on a pass/no pass basis. Prerequisites: ED 350 and 351, passing scores on the reading portion of the Praxis I exam and a 2.5 GPA. Corequisite: ED 443
- 461 Characteristics of the Student with Learning Disabilities (3)**  
 Theories, characteristics and needs of students with specific learning disabilities are studied from an interdisciplinary perspective. The course provides a comprehensive view of research of the study of learning disabilities, criteria and diagnostic techniques for identification, and appropriate intervention.
- 463 Behavior Management of Exceptional Students (3)**  
 This course will include study of behavior management techniques, remedial intervention and the development of appropriate social behavior in the school, home, and community settings. Attention will be given to the application of techniques based upon behavioral, affective, and cognitive theories.
- 465 Curriculum and Instruction for Students with Learning Disabilities (3)**  
 A course which focuses on procedures for developing and evaluating instructional programming for individuals with specific learning disabilities. Study of curricular models, methods of adapting curriculum, materials and instructional strategies to facilitate the placement of these students into a continuum of services will be emphasized. Field experiences are included.
- 467 Psychoeducational Assessment (3)**  
 A course emphasizing the study of educational diagnosis and assessment of students using individual and group standardized tests, criterion referenced measures, curriculum based assessments, and informal observation techniques. Consideration is given to the administration and interpretation of assessment measures, and the practical application of test information in programming for students suspected of having a specific learning disability.
- 474 Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum (2)**  
 A course designed to contribute to students' understanding of the principles of learning; classroom management; selection and use of materials, including media and computers; and evaluation of pupil performance. Curriculum for both middle and secondary education will be explored. Additionally, the course will cover the general structures of the secondary school, curricular design, the process of curricular change, and trends and innovations in the students' intended teaching program. Prerequisite: Admission to the Teacher Education program. Corequisite: ED 478.
- 478 Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education (1)**  
 A field experience designed to acquaint prospective secondary teachers with the day-to-day realities of teaching as they observe students and their behavior patterns in both structured and non-structured settings, become acquainted with the diverse levels of achievement within the classroom, learn to evaluate curricular materials and resources, and gain practical experience by assuming a variety of teacher roles. The student will gain practice in instructing the total class, the small group, and the individual during the 30-hour placement in a secondary school (grades 6-12) or appropriate placement to give the student exposure for PK-12 licensure. Attention is given to observational, audiovisual, and instructional skills needed in the placement. Prerequisite: Admission to the Education program. Corequisite: ED 474. Graded on Pass/Fail basis.



**483 Mathematics and Science for Elementary Education (2)**

A course designed to prepare students to teach mathematics and science content, concepts, and skills for grades PK-6. Prerequisite: Admission to the Teacher Education program.

**Directed Teaching/Seminar**

The student will enroll in the appropriate directed teaching course during one semester of the student's senior year after having successfully completed the appropriate instruction course and all other professional education requirements with a grade of C or better. Students seeking licensure in secondary education, Art (PK-12), Theatre Arts (PK-12) or Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education (PK-12) will enroll in ED 406 as part of the semester of directed teaching. **All students must be fully admitted to the Teacher Education Program and have passed both Praxis I and II before they will be placed in directed teaching. In addition, passing scores on the Virginia Reading Assessment, if applicable, must be achieved before graduation. This test is required for PK-6 and Reading Specialist certification.**

The student will be placed in an area public school for the directed teaching experience in keeping with the student's intended teaching area. The student teacher will be supervised by public school personnel and by University personnel with experience appropriate to the student's intended area(s) of licensure. For each endorsement being sought, the student will, in the directed teaching experience and/or in earlier practica, gain supervised experience in at least two settings in two different school divisions for a minimum of 300 clock hours, at least half of which will be in direct instruction.

Secondary and PK-12 candidates who wish initial recommendation for licensure in two or more subject areas must undertake directed teaching in each area. If a PK-12 endorsement is sought, teaching activities must be at the elementary and secondary levels.

Seminars are held concurrently with directed teaching and are intended to provide systematic discussion of the student's experiences during directed teaching and provide assistance in solving the common problems faced by the students in directed teaching. Such seminars are part of the student's professional semester.

The combined Directed Teaching/Seminar is graded on a Pass/Fail basis only.

The directed teaching courses are listed below:

- |            |   |             |
|------------|---|-------------|
| <b>488</b> | <b>Directed Teaching/Seminar in Grades PK-6</b>               | <b>(12)</b> |
| <b>489</b> | <b>Directed Teaching/Seminar in Secondary/PK-12 Education</b> | <b>(12)</b> |

---



---

# ENGLISH (ENG)

---



---

Dr. Stephen C. Ausband, *Chair*  
 Dr. Ann D. Garbett  
 Mr. Michael G. Hammonds  
 Dr. Betty B. Heard

Dr. Stephen Hecox  
 Dr. David E. Hoffman  
 Mr. Karl Wallhausser

The English Department offers a Bachelor of Arts degree to the student who completes a minimum of 42 semester hours in English. Religion, theatre arts and speech, French, and history are recommended as related fields of study. The selection of required and suggested courses insures that students completing a major in English are proficient in their use of written language, have good analytical skills, are careful readers, and have a strong background in the major texts and movements. While many of Averett's English majors elect to teach in secondary schools, others pursue advanced degrees in law, business, and graduate schools, and many go into journalism or business-related fields such as public relations or advertising.

Students must attain at least a 2.50 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in English:

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English.....	3
ENG 405, Modern Literature .....	3
ENG 414, Shakespeare.....	3

At least one course from each of the following pairs:

ENG 320, English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries <b>or</b>	
ENG 323, Restoration and 18th Century Literature .....	3
ENG 401, Romantic Poetry and Prose <b>or</b>	
ENG 402, Victorian Poetry and Prose.....	3
ENG 406, Romantic Movement in American Literature <b>or</b>	
ENG 407, American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII .....	3
ENG 413, Chaucer <b>or</b> 415, Milton.....	3

English electives at 300-400 level.....	9
<b>Total</b>	<b>42</b>

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: English

Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research  
 ENG 112, Introduction to Literature

Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century  
 ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries

Junior Year:

- ENG 320 or 323, The English Novel in the 18th and 19<sup>th</sup> Centuries **or**  
Restoration and 18th Century Literature
- ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English
- ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature **or**  
American Literature: Gilded Age to WWII
- ENG 300+ Elective
- ENG 400+ Elective

Senior Year:

- ENG 401 or 402, Romantic Poetry and Prose **or** Victorian Poetry and Prose
- ENG 413 or 415, Chaucer or Milton
- ENG 405, Modern Literature
- ENG 414, Shakespeare
- ENG 300+ or 400+ Elective

**Requirements for a Major in English  
with a Teaching License**

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 320, The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries <b>or</b> ENG 323, Restoration and 18th Century Literature .....	3
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English.....	3
ENG 401, Romantic Poetry and Prose <b>or</b> ENG 402, Victorian Poetry and Prose.....	3
ENG 405, Modern Literature .....	3
ENG 406, Romantic Movement in American Literature <b>or</b> ENG 407, American Literature: Gilded Age to WWII .....	3
ENG 412, Creative Writing.....	3
ENG 413, Chaucer <b>or</b> ENG 415, Milton.....	3
ENG 414, Shakespeare.....	3
ENG 421, Teaching Composition .....	3
English elective at 300-400 level .....	<u>3</u>
	Total 42

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in English are explained in detail on page 115.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

**English with a Teaching License**

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
- ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
- HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems
- CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

**Sophomore Year:**

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century  
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries  
ED 290, Foundations of Education  
HIS 201 **or** 202, United States History I **or**  
United States History II  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology  
PE Fitness Course

**Junior Year:**

ENG 320 or 323, The English Novel in the 18th and 19th  
Centuries **or** Restoration and 18th Century Literature  
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English  
ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature **or**  
American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII  
ENG 412, Creative Writing  
ENG 300+ Elective  
ENG 400+ Elective  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics  
PE Fitness Course

**Senior Year:**

ENG 401 **or** 402, Romantic Poetry and Prose **or**  
Victorian Poetry and Prose  
ENG 413 **or** 415, Chaucer **or** Milton  
ENG 405, Modern Literature  
ENG 414, Shakespeare  
ENG 421, Teaching Composition  
ENG 300+ or 400+ Elective  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## **English/Theatre**

Course requirements for the English/Theatre major are outlined on page 219 of this catalog.

## **Journalism**

Course requirements for the Journalism major are outlined on page 156 of this catalog.

## **Minor**

Students electing a minor in English must complete 18 hours in English numbered 112 or higher; at least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

- 111 Introduction to Writing and Research (3)**  
A review of usage, punctuation, and paragraph development. Emphasis on effective written communication, especially in short (1-3 page) essays. Includes some critical study of prose fiction. Frequent in-class and out-of-class writing practice. Instruction in use of library for research and in various stages of assembling research material. Required of freshmen.
- 112 Introduction to Literature (3)**  
The reading of fiction, poetry, and drama, both classic and contemporary. Emphasis on genre study, literary terminology, and critical analysis. Includes further practice in use of research materials and preparation of a term paper on a literary topic. Prerequisite: ENG 111.
- 201 Major British Authors, through 18th Century (3)**  
A study of English literature as represented by the principal writers from the author of Beowulf through the eighteenth century. Stress on interpretation and critical analysis. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.
- 202 Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries (3)**  
A study of English literature as represented by the principal writers of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Stress on interpretation and critical analysis. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.
- 210 Oral Interpretation of Literature (Same as TH 210) (3)**  
A course designed to introduce the student to the oral communication of various forms of literature and to instruct the student in techniques of oral delivery. Regular performance in an informal atmosphere with constructive criticism by the instructor and fellow students makes up a major part of the course.
- 220 Literature of the Western World (3)**  
A survey of major writers (excluding British and American) of the western world from the ancient Greeks to the beginnings of the twentieth century. Students will also be familiarized with the literary and cultural backgrounds of the works in question. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112.
- 316 Mythology (3)**  
A systematic treatment of basic Greek and Roman tales of gods and heroes, with a study of parallel myths in other ancient religions. The use of mythological themes in the arts, ancient and modern, including vase paintings, painting, sculpture, opera and other musical forms, epic and drama. Attention to the nature and role of myth in any society. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112. Does not satisfy the General Education requirement in English.
- 317 Southern Literature (3)**  
A course which gives students an overview of the rich literature, unique culture and regional traditions of the South. Although students will be introduced to 17<sup>th</sup>, 18<sup>th</sup>, and 19<sup>th</sup> century Southern literature, a major part of the study will be devoted to 20<sup>th</sup> century writers, including the Fugitive/Agrarian Vanderbilt writers, and more contemporary writers such as William Faulkner, Eudora Welty, Reynolds Price, Zora Neale Hurston, Clyde Edgerton, Lee Smith, and Harry Crews, among others. Prerequisites: English 111, 112.
- 320 The English Novel in the 18th and 19th Centuries (3)**  
A review and analysis of novels of Fielding, Austen, Dickens, Eliot, Hardy, and others. The evolution of the novel from earlier types of fiction, its development, variety, and usual features from 1740 to 1900. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

- 323 Restoration and 18th Century Literature (3)**  
 A study of major authors from 1660 to 1798, with emphasis on Dryden, Restoration Comedy, Pope, Addison and Steele, Swift, Johnson, and the beginnings of the English novel. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 349 Internship (3)**  
 An opportunity for students to work in the Averett University Learning Center. The student's responsibilities will include working with the Director of the Learning Center to set up conferences with students needing assistance with writing and literary study, working with individual students and with small groups of students on writing skills and literary analysis, and helping students work with tutorial programs on the computers in the Learning Center. The student will be under the direct supervision of the Director of the Learning Center and will confer regularly with a faculty member in the Department of English. The minimum number of clock hours of work in the Learning Center is eighty. This course is available only to students who have completed all their general education requirements in English and who have shown strengths in their writing and in the study of literature. This course will not fulfill the general education requirements for a course in literature at the 200-level or higher.
- 390 Origins and Structure of English (3)**  
 An examination of the history of English chronologically, beginning with its prehistoric sources in Indo-European and Germanic and observing its development through Old, Middle, and Early Modern English. The study concludes with an examination of the grammar of present-day English. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112 and one literature course.
- 401 Romantic Poetry and Prose (3)**  
 A study of the chief Romantic poets--Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats--and some other poets of the period. Romantic critics and essayists such as Coleridge, Hazlitt, DeQuincey. (Fiction is not included.) The background of the Romantic revolution; the literary scene in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 402 Victorian Poetry and Prose (3)**  
 A study of Browning, Tennyson, Arnold; minor and late Victorian poets; writers of non-fictional prose such as Carlyle, Newman, Mill, Ruskin, Arnold, and Huxley. The issues and attitudes of English life and thought in the last two-thirds of the nineteenth century. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 405 Modern Literature (3)**  
 A study of major authors, works, and trends in modern British and American literature. Emphasis on Joyce, Fitzgerald, Faulkner, and selected multi-cultural authors among prose writers and Pound, Williams, Auden, Lowell and Plath among poets. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course.
- 406 The Romantic Movement in American Literature (3)**  
 A study of the major literature of the early to mid-nineteenth century in the United States. Emphasis on the influence of English and European romanticism on American writers. Concentration on the major works of Poe, Emerson, Hawthorne, Melville, Thoreau, and Whitman. Some background in pre-romantic American writers. Prerequisites: English 111, 112, and any other literature course.
- 407 American Literature: The Gilded Age to World War II (3)**  
 Emphasis on later nineteenth-century and early twentieth-century American literature. Emphasis on the realistic and naturalistic movements in nineteenth century fiction and on new directions in twentieth-century fiction and poetry. Focus on works by Twain, Howells, James, Crane, Dreiser, Wharton, Chestnut, Robinson, Frost, Eliot, Hemingway, Faulkner, Hughes, Wright, and others. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and any other literature course.

- 409 Classical Dramatic Literature (3)**  
A study of the development of western drama from the fifth century B.C. Greeks to the 19th century. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one literature course; TH 220 recommended. Alternate years.
- 410 Modern Drama (Same as TH 410) (3)**  
A study of the development of drama from Ibsen to today, including American, European and Third World playwrights. Prerequisite: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 412 Creative Writing (3)**  
The practice of imaginative writing. Types of writing include: poetry, essay, and the short story. Current and recent stories, poems, and articles are read and discussed. Required of prospective teachers of English, open to all students. Does not satisfy General Education requirements for English. Prerequisite: ENG 111, 112, and one other English course.
- 413 Chaucer (3)**  
The study of Chaucer's development and achievement as exemplified through the minor poems, Troilus and Criseyde, and The Canterbury Tales. Some background study of medieval thought and literature and of Middle English. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 414 Shakespeare (Same as TH 414) (3)**  
The study of representative comedies, histories, and tragedies, showing Shakespeare's practice in each type, the development of his art and craftsmanship as poet and dramatist, and the progress of his thought and style. Introduction to Shakespeare's world and theatre. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course.
- 415 Milton (3)**  
A full study of Milton's major poems, plus a brief examination of the minor poems and selected prose. The course also considers Milton's development as a writer and major influences on him. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.
- 421 Teaching Composition (3)**  
A course focusing on techniques of teaching and evaluating expository writing (including research writing). Secondary attention will be given to topics such as standards of usage, course planning in composition, and correlating composition and literature. This course is required for all English majors seeking teacher certification. Alternate years.
- 470 Literature for Children (3)**  
The study of literature appropriate for children. Emphasis on traditional literature, modern fantasy, contemporary realistic fiction, poetry, and multi-ethnic literature. Requirements include oral/written critical analysis. Required for students seeking PK-6 teacher licensure. Taken in addition to ENG 111, 112, and 201, or a higher-level literature course. May be taken by others seeking Liberal Studies major with English concentration. Admission to the Education program not a prerequisite. This course does not satisfy the general education requirement in English and it cannot be used as an English elective by English majors.

---



---

## ENGLISH/HISTORY (PRE-LAW)

---



---

Dr. Stephen C. Ausband  
 Dr. Ann D. Garbett  
 Mr. Michael G. Hammonds  
 Dr. Jack I. Hayes, *Chair*  
 Dr. Betty B. Heard

Dr. Stephen Hecox  
 Dr. David Hoffman  
 Dr. William S. Trakas  
 Mr. Karl Wallhausser  
 Dr. Darcy Wudel

A Pre-Law major, such as the English/History major, is NOT required for admission to law school. Successful law students come to law school with undergraduate majors as diverse as sociology and business, nursing and engineering, music theory and computer science. Nevertheless, students in law school need a foundation of skills, values, and bodies of knowledge, which Averett's English/History (Pre-Law) major seeks to provide. The necessary skills include analytic and problem-solving abilities, critical reading skills, the ability to write, speak, and listen effectively, and skills in research and the management and organization of large amounts of information. The necessary values include a dedication to serving others honestly and competently and to advancing fairness and justice. The bodies of knowledge that students need include a broad understanding of the following: history, especially American history; the American system of government; economics; human behavior and social interaction; financial transactions; diverse cultures; and ethics.

### Requirements for a Major in English/History (Pre-Law):

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research .....	3
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature .....	3
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 406, Romantic Movement in American Literature <b>or</b>	
ENG 407, American Literature: The Gilded Age to World War II .....	3
English elective in literature at 300 level .....	3
English elective in literature at 400 level .....	3
HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II .....	6
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II .....	1
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II .....	6
HIS 322, English History, 1485 to Present .....	3
History electives at 300-400 level .....	6
POS 215, American National Government .....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government .....	1
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy <b>or</b> PHL 210, Ethics .....	3
Electives (To be selected from the following) .....	<u>2</u>
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I	
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II	
BSA 434, Business Law	
POS 411, Constitutional Law	
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science	
PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology	
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology	
One upper level Sociology course	
<b>Total</b>	<b>59</b>

Students will be accepted into the program at the end of their first 30 hours of work, if they have attained a 2.75 overall grade point average and a 3.00 grade point average in English and History.



Students in the program will be expected to maintain those grade point averages throughout their college work.

Students whose grades fall below the 2.75 overall grade point average or the 3.00 in English and History courses will be granted one semester's work (15 hours) to raise their grades to the necessary level. Students will be granted probationary status only once.

Transfer students will be granted a semester's probation (15 hours) to achieve the requisite grade point average (2.75 overall and 3.00 in English and History courses) in work at Averett University.

The English/History (Pre-Law) major is administered through the History Department.

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

### **English/History (Pre-Law)**

#### Freshman Year:

ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research  
ENG 112, Introduction to Literature  
HIS 101, 102, Western Civilization I, II  
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: Western Civilization II  
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics

#### Sophomore Year:

ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century  
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries  
POS 215, American National Government  
POS 216, State and Local Government  
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II

#### Junior Year:

Recommended Elective  
ENG 406 or 407, Romantic Movement in American Literature **or** American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII  
ENG 300-level Literature Elective  
HIS 322, English History, 1485 to Present  
HIS 300-level Elective

#### Senior Year:

2 Recommended Electives  
ENG 400-level Literature  
HIS 300- or 400-level Elective

---

---

# ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES (ENS)

---

---

Dr. James Caldwell, *Chair*  
Dr. Michael Sykes

Dr. Edward W. Fisher  
Ms. Laura D. Meder

Interdisciplinary study in environmental science comes naturally from the interaction of humankind with the environment. The goal of this department is to provide competent students with sufficient knowledge in biology and in chemistry and with practical aspects of laboratory and field experiences in the environment. Great career opportunities exist in local, state, and federal government and in industry.

## Requirements for a Major in Environmental Sciences:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II .....	8
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab.....	4
CH 206, Biological Chemistry .....	4
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry .....	4
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 102, General Botany.....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology.....	4
BIO 301, Microbiology .....	4
BIO 330, General Ecology.....	4
BIO 416, General Taxonomy .....	4
BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology .....	3
ENS 215, Environmental Problems.....	4
ENS 425, Field Experience in Environmental Studies.....	1-4
Total	52-55

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all courses taken at Averett University in the major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives in Biology, Environmental Sciences and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors shall take a comprehensive examination administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the examination will encompass all required core courses for the degree. The examination will be taken in the first semester of the senior year. The student is required to make 75 (out of a possible 100 points) to pass. Any student who does not pass the examination will be given the opportunity to repeat the examination the following semester. Given the timing of the examination, all core courses should be completed prior to the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the College are maintained.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

### Environmental Sciences

#### Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 102, General Botany  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

#### Sophomore Year:

ENS 215, Environmental Problems  
BIO 301, Microbiology  
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Lab

#### Junior Year:

BIO 330, General Ecology  
CH 206, Biological Chemistry  
CH 260, Inorganic Chemistry  
BIO 462/ENS 462, Topics in Environmental Biology

#### Senior Year:

BIO 416, General Taxonomy  
ENS 425, Field Experience in Environmental Studies

## Courses of Instruction

### **215 Environmental Problems (Same as BIO 215) (4)**

The study of the interdependency and interconnectedness related to power (fossil fuel, nuclear, solar, and other alternatives). Air and water pollution, waste generation and disposal, wetlands, soils and chemicals and water and sewage treatment methods will be discussed. Laboratory exercises related to these topics will be conducted. No prerequisites.

### **330 Environmental Chemistry (4)**

A study of the sources, reactions, transport, effects and fates of chemical species in water, soil and air. A variety of techniques are used to illustrate these factors in lecture and laboratory, including sampling, analysis, computer modeling, bioassay and development of an environmental impact study. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 206, BIO 101, and BIO 102 or 103.

### **342 Environmental Policy and Law (Same as BIO 342 and POS 342) (3)**

A survey of environmental laws and regulations in the United States: who makes the laws and why, and who enforces the laws and how. Consideration will be given to the experience of other countries and to alternative paradigms of environmental protection.

### **410 Instrumental Analysis in Biology and Chemistry (4)**

A study which combines CH 320, Instrumental Analysis, with the analytical methods and equipment used in the biological sciences, such as microscopy, soil analysis, D.O., B.O.D., etc. Team taught by Biology and Chemistry faculty. Prerequisites: CH 101, 102, 206, 260 and BIO 101, 102, 103, 301, 330. Alternate years or on demand.

**417 Water Quality Assessment (Same as CH 417) (4)**

A course that introduces water quality testing and assessment. Commonly used testing methods and instrumentation provide a range of skills that may be used in the classroom and in the field. Topics include EPA-approved sampling and data collection techniques, instrument calibration and operation, environmental public policy issues, and the use of spreadsheets for data compilation. Aquatic environments will be monitored on a regular basis. No prerequisites.

**425 Field Experience in Environmental Studies (1-4)**

A field experience in which students, during their senior year, work with various government agencies and private enterprises by investigating, documenting, and writing research paper(s) pertaining to the environmental problems. They will also attend and conduct seminars. Prerequisite: ENS majors with senior status.

**462 Topics in Environmental Biology (Same as BIO 462) (3)**

A seminar course that will examine the scientific, historical, ethical, political, and economic dimensions of the environment. Readings, oral, written and video presentations, and class discussions will comprise the format of this course. This course will meet University writing, oral and technology competencies. Prerequisite: Junior or Senior Biology majors or permission of instructor.

---

---

# EQUESTRIAN STUDIES (ES)

---

---

Ms. Jane Faulkner  
Ms. Virginia Henderson, *Chair*

The Equestrian Studies Department's objectives are to produce graduates with a broad base of knowledge in horsemanship, an attitude of professionalism, and provide a gateway into the equine industry.

The Equestrian Studies program uses classes at the Equestrian Center and the main campus to give students a broad education on horse-related topics. Although a diverse education continues throughout the program, majors must choose an area of concentration. Three concentrations are offered. **Equine Management** is for students most interested in business, facility and show management. **Dressage Instruction** is for students interested in developing a classical foundation of theory and ability in training and teaching dressage. **Eventing Instruction** is for students who are most interested in training and teaching the sport of eventing. An **Equestrian Studies minor** is also offered.

Students are offered the experience of clinics, workshops and seminars in addition to classes. Participation in shows, intercollegiate competitions, combined tests, horse trials, trek, and drill-rides is available to students who have shown satisfactory improvement. Self-motivation and athleticism are necessary for ES students to succeed. Guidance for specialized certification or post-graduate education is offered.

Possible career choices include equine insurance; pharmaceutical or equipment sales; design and/or construction of barns, courses, or facilities; equine massage; chiropractic; tourism; training; teaching; equine journalism; ownership/management of tack or feed stores; and racing, showing, boarding, or breeding stables.

Incoming freshmen are required to take a riding test and will be placed, according to their experience, into one of the Horsemastership courses. Students must attain a minimum GPA for 2.50 for all courses in the major or minor. In addition, ES majors must pass a departmental exit exam in order to graduate.

## Core Requirements for All Majors in Equestrian Studies:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following ES Core courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care .....	2
ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals .....	2
ES 115, Stable Management .....	3
ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology .....	4
ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding .....	3
ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease.....	3
ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management.....	3
ES 420, Equine Nutrition .....	3
ES 470, Internship.....	3
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BSA 206, Business Communication .....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
	Total 39

(Total includes BIO 101, which fulfills a general education requirement and is a prerequisite to ES 208)

## Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Equine Management

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following Equine **Management** courses are required:

ES 108, Horsemastership III .....	2
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I.....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA 324, Business Finance .....	3
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership.....	3
BSA 354, Human Resources Management .....	3
BSA 434, Business Law.....	3
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
Concentration Total	26

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Equestrian Studies: Equine Management

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 BSA 206, Business Communication  
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
 ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care  
 ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals  
 ES 115, Stable Management  
 ES 108, Horsemastership III

Sophomore Year:

ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology  
 ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding  
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
 ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

Junior Year:

ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease  
 ES 470, Internship  
 BSA 305, Principles of Management  
 BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
 BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory & Leadership

Senior Year:

ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management  
 ES 420, Equine Nutrition  
 BSA 324, Business Finance  
 BSA 354, Human Resource Management  
 BSA 434, Business Law

## Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Dressage Instruction

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following **Dressage Instruction** courses are required

	Semester Hours
ES 109, Horsemastership IV .....	2
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application .....	2
ES 213, Dressage Through 1 <sup>st</sup> Level .....	2
ES 313, Dressage Through 2 <sup>nd</sup> Level .....	3
ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs .....	3
ES 323, Advancing the Dressage Horse .....	2
ES 423, Teaching Dressage T-2 .....	3
ES 424, Instructor's Apprentice .....	2
Select ONE of the following:	
ES 214, Introduction to the Sport of Eventing OR	
ES 314, Early Training of the Young Event Horse .....	2
Select ONE of the following:	
POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership OR JR 115, News and Feature Writing OR	
JR 210, Photography OR PE 205, Lifetime Fitness OR	
PE 365, Sports Psychology .....	<u>3</u>

Dressage Track Total 24

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

#### Equestrian Studies: Dressage Instruction

##### Freshman Year:

ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care  
 ES 109, Horsemastership IV  
 ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals  
 ES 115, Stable Management  
 BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 BSA 206, Business Communication  
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

##### Sophomore Year:

ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology  
 ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application  
 ES 213, Dressage Through 1<sup>st</sup> Level  
 ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding  
 Dressage Track Choice  
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

##### Junior Year:

ES 313, Dressage Through 2<sup>nd</sup> Level  
 ES 323, Advancing the Dressage Horse  
 ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease  
 ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs  
 ES 470, Internship  
 Dressage Track Choice

##### Senior Year:

ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management  
 ES 420, Equine Nutrition  
 ES 423, Teaching Dressage T-2  
 ES 424, Instructor's Apprentice

## Requirements for Equestrian Studies: Eventing Instruction

In addition to the general education requirements and the equestrian studies core courses, the following **Eventing Instruction** courses are required:

	Semester Hours
ES 109, Horsemastership IV .....	2
ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application .....	2
ES 214, Introduction to the Sport of Eventing .....	2
ES 314, Early Training of the Young Event Horse .....	2
ES 316, Training the Event Horse I .....	2
ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs.....	3
ES 416, Training the Event Horse II .....	2
ES 417, Theory and Application of Eventing .....	3
ES 418, Preparation for USEA/ICP Instructors .....	3
Choose ONE of the following:	
ES 213, Dressage Through 1 <sup>st</sup> Level	
JR 115, News and Feature Writing	
JR 210, Photography	
BSA 353, Entrepreneurship	
PE 365, Sports Psychology	
POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership.....	<u>3</u>
Eventing Track Total	24

### Sample Four Year Course Sequence:

#### Equestrian Studies: Eventing Instruction

##### Freshman Year:

ES 105, Practical Concepts of Equine Care  
 ES 109, Horsemastership IV  
 ES 111, Careers: Integrating Personal Goals  
 ES 115, Stable Management  
 BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
 BSA 206, Business Communication  
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software

##### Sophomore Year:

ES 208, Equine Anatomy and Physiology  
 ES 211, Lunge Theory and Application  
 ES 214, Introduction to the Sport of Eventing  
 ES 224, Teaching Elementary Riding  
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety

##### Junior Year:

ES 314, Early Training of the Young Event Horse  
 ES 316, Training the Event Horse I  
 ES 326, Equine Lameness and Disease  
 ES 330, Riding Instruction Programs  
 ES 470, Internship  
 Eventing Track Choice



Senior Year:

ES 401, Strategies for Equine Business Management  
ES 416, Training the Event Horse II  
ES 417, Theory and Application of Eventing  
ES 418, Preparation for USEA/CIP Instructors  
ES 420, Equine Nutrition

## Minor

A student electing a minor in Equestrian Studies must complete 19 semester hours. Required courses are ES 105, 108, 208, and 224 for eleven semester hours. In addition, students must select one other riding class above the Horsemastership III level for 2 semester hours. Students must also select two of the following courses for 6 semester hours: ES 326, 330, 401, and 420.

Students must maintain a minimum GPA of 2.50 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

NOTE: Students auditing riding classes will not participate as riders or be assigned a horse.

### **102 Novice Riding (Same as PE 103) (2)**

A laboratory course designed for non-equestrian studies majors. The basic equestrian skills necessary for the student to prepare and ride the horse in a disciplined, safe and harmonious manner at walk and trot are stressed. The class is strongly assisted by equestrian studies student teachers.

### **105 Practical Concepts of Equine Care (2)**

A practicum course designed to help students gain practical knowledge and skills required in the care and handling of the horse. Participation in Averett stable procedures and routines is an integral part of this experience.

### **106 Horsemastership I (2)**

As a prelude to all good riding, riders must have a balanced and independent seat. Although the seat takes continual dedicated effort from a self-motivated student, this class sets the foundation. Students study equitation and develop feel at all three gaits through lunge lessons given by professors and/or student teachers. Seat lessons include exercises without reins and stirrups at all gaits. Some cavaletti, ground care and off-lunge training is included. Strength and suppleness of rider will be addressed.

### **107 Horsemastership II (2)**

Students study the aids used to effectively balance and supple the horses. They will learn correct driving aids to energize the horse forward into an elastic, educated, and influential connection – includes training level concepts, cavaletti and ground care. Prerequisite: Confidence at all gaits without stirrups.

### **108 Horsemanship III (2)**

Freshman Placement Course: Students study training level dressage, cavaletti and jumping. Students will effectively energize, balance and supple horses into an elastic and influential connection “on the bit.” Ground care is included. This class will help prepare students for Horsemastership IV. This class is required for the Management Track. Prerequisite: Confidence at all gaits without stirrups and some experience putting horses “on the bit.”

- 109 Horsemasterhip IV (2)**  
Freshman Placement Course: This is the most advanced in the series of freshman placement courses. This course is for students who have already enjoyed success at training level dressage and beginning jumping. The students will be introduced to the Training Scale purpose, progression and application. Students study effectiveness of aids and position necessary to influence the quality of movement of the horse through 1<sup>st</sup> level dressage, cavaletti and jumping. Ground care and ground training are included. This class is required for the Dressage and Eventing Tracks. Prerequisite: Success at training level dressage and beginning jumping.
- 111 Equine Careers: Integrating Personal Goals (2)**  
Students will develop a career plan based on increased self-awareness, personality traits, values, interests, and goals. In addition students will learn to prioritize and align the information gleaned with their future plans for a career in some aspect of the equine industry.
- 115 Stable Management (3)**  
A course designed to teach the student various skills needed by a stable manager. Topics include but are not limited to facility design, pasture management, and record keeping. Skills learned will include but not be limited to various restraint methods, braiding, wraps, injections, trimming and clipping. Prerequisite: ES 105.
- 208 Equine Anatomy and Physiology (4)**  
A lecture and laboratory course to study the basic concepts of equine anatomy and physiology (e.g., tissue and skeletal systems, muscles, digestion and nutrition, respiration and circulation, nervous and endocrine systems, reproduction and lactation). A limited comparison with some of the other domesticated large animals will be included. Prerequisite: BIO 101.
- 211 Lunge Theory and Applications (2)**  
The students learn correct, effective lunging technique as determined by the USDF. They learn how to analyze a variety of horses' strengths and weaknesses and design an appropriate course for improvement. In addition, they learn to analyze the rider's seat on the lunge and give appropriate exercises for improvement in an organized and flexible lesson while using correct lunging technique and vocabulary. Students will establish a professional demeanor and a rapport of compassion and encouragement. They will be both teachers and riders in these lessons and will have the opportunity to improve their own seat as well. Prerequisite: ES 108 or 109.
- 213 Dressage Through First Level (2)**  
This course discusses appropriate action for improvement from classical training methods. The students confirm effectiveness of aids and position through 1<sup>st</sup> level dressage. The students are required to participate in clinics, workshops, or competitions that may fall on weekend days. Prerequisite: ES109.
- 214 Introduction to the Sport of Eventing (2)**  
A course designed to introduce the student to the skills and knowledge required to compete in the sport of Eventing. The aim of the instruction will be to develop in the rider a correct, balanced, supple and effective seat for jumping and dressage. Riders will learn the correct use of aids for the exercises appropriate to the level, focusing upon the progressive development of horse and rider leading to greater confidence between them. Many aspects of the sport will be discussed, such as tack selection, horse health, and rules for event competitions. Prerequisite: ES 109.
- 224 Teaching Elementary Riding (3)**  
A course designed to teach organization, preparation, control, and presentation of a riding lesson. Application will involve actual teaching of beginning riding students under supervision. Prerequisites: ES 109, and ES 211.

- 313 Dressage Through Second Level (3)**  
This course discusses appropriate action for improvement from classical training methods. The students learn effectiveness of aids and position up to the 2<sup>nd</sup> level. The students are required to participate in clinics, workshops and/or competitions that may fall on weekend days. Prerequisite: ES 213, with grade of A or B.
- 314 Early Training of the Young Event Horse (2)**  
A course designed to introduce the student to the process of training the young or inexperienced horse. Riding instruction will focus on helping the rider to use clear, subtle and effective aids to influence and reward the horse. Horses learn at different speeds and will start the training at different levels. Student will be assigned certain horses and an individual training plan will be outlined with instructor. Students will practice safe classical methods of lunging, long lining, and round pen work to prepare horses to work properly under saddle. Discussions will include prospect horse selection, methods for reschooling racehorses, as well as other unique training challenges. Prerequisite: ES 214.
- 316 Training the Event Horse I (2)**  
A course designed to introduce the rider to the processes of preparing a horse for, and competing a specific horse at, an appropriate level. Riders will compete 2 times during the semester at least at Beginner Novice level. The goal of the riding instruction will be to help the rider produce a horse that is going freely forward in his gaits, and accepting the aids in an appropriate frame for the level. The rider will also practice safe and appropriate schooling exercises for jumping and cross-country riding. Horse care and proper fitness will be stressed. Prerequisite: ES 314.
- 323 Advancing the Dressage Horse (3)**  
The students assess a variety of horses and design plans for training improvement based on classical theory from The German Training Scale. Introductory through 2<sup>nd</sup> level exercises will be studied. Students may participate in workshops or clinics that may fall on weekend days. The students learn the format used in USDF instructor's certification. Prerequisite: ES 313.
- 326 Equine Lameness and Disease (3)**  
A course designed to acquaint the student with common equine lamenesses and diseases. Causes, symptoms, and treatments of various diseases will be discussed. The student will become familiar with the etiology of numerous lamenesses, as well as the prognosis and treatment of these conditions. Prerequisite: ES 208.
- 330 Riding Instruction Programs (3)**  
A course designed to improve the teaching skills of riding instructors and to help prepare them for a career in the horse industry. Lecture topics such things as lateral movements and jumping, impromptu lessons, and the organization of shows and clinics. Application will involve actual teaching of students under supervision. Prerequisite: ES 224.
- 401 Strategies for Equine Business Management (3)**  
This course will be the culmination of applications for problem solving and decision-making across the functional areas of all business-related issues surrounding Equestrian Studies and business Administration. Case studies and simulations specific to Equine Management issues are used to explore the sources and varieties of complex problems confronting contemporary businesses. The focus of this course is on the management of equine businesses – large and small. This is a capstone class and will only be offered to seniors. Prerequisites: Senior status and BSA 206.

- 416 Training the Event Horse II (2)**  
The goal of the instruction is to help the rider develop a horse that is more balanced in transitions, more responsive to lateral aids, and more connected between leg and hand. Instruction will focus on exercises requiring varying degrees of the application of aids and the coordinated timing of the aids, helping the rider develop a feel for training. Horse and rider strength and athleticism will be increased by progressive endurance and jumping exercises. Riders will compete in 2 or more competitions during the semester at the Novice level or above. Prerequisite: ES 316.
- 417 Theory and Application of Eventing (3)**  
A study of concepts and practices of eventing in the horse industry. Primary topics will included structure and official positions within the United States Eventing Association, event organization and development, course design and building, and stable management. Students will be required to attend and volunteer at recognized events during the semester. Prerequisite: ES 316.
- 418 Preparation for USEEA/ICP Instructors (3)**  
A study of the United States Eventing Association standards for certification of eventing instructors. Topics will include dressage and jumping instructional standards, teaching theory and practice, horse and stable management. Students may attend USEA/ICP workshops during the semester. Students may also prepare for and attempt ARIA instructor's exam. Prerequisites: ES 330 and ES 417.
- 420 Equine Nutrition (3)**  
A course designed to help the student understand the basic principles of feeding horses. Topics include anatomy of the digestive tract of the horse as it affects feeding practices; nutrient requirements for maintenance, work, pregnancy, and lactation in the horse. Recent advances in equine nutrition will be discussed. Prerequisite: ES 208.
- 423 Teaching Dressage T-2 (3)**  
The students gain practical knowledge and evaluative skills needed to be able to formulate appropriate advice for students schooling as high as 2<sup>nd</sup> level. They learn to give instruction that is organized, creative and flexible using correct vocabulary to achieve success with professional demeanor and a rapport of compassion and encouragement. They apply skills in private and group lessons using the format of USDF instructor's certification. Prerequisites: ES 330 and ES 323, with grade of A or B.
- 424 Instructor's Apprentice (2)**  
Class meeting times vary throughout the semester as students will be required to be the instructor's apprentice for other ES courses. This hands-on application of theory and skill adds composure and confidence to the student's style. The student learns to fully accept responsibility for safety and improvement of training of other horses and riders. Prerequisite: ES 423, with grade of A or B.
- 470 Internship (3-6)**  
A required course designed to help the student gain practical work experience and develop industry contacts. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average.

---

---

# **FRENCH (FR)**

---

---

Dr. Geneviève Moëne  
Dr. Lawrence Wilburn

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills which help them to function in the language. The goal of each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

## **Placement**

Students who wish to begin the study of French for the first time are not required to sit for the placement exercise.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of French at Averett, must sit for the placement exercise. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. A low score may result in the placement of the student in a lower level class for remedial purposes. No credit hours will be earned. (See section on Placement Tests on pages 10 and 12.)

Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of French within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exercise, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Opportunities for study abroad are available and arrangements may be made with the French professor.

## **Minor**

A minor in French is available to students who satisfactorily complete FR 221, 222, 225, and any 300 level course. Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## **Liberal Studies: Teaching License Majors**

Students who wish to earn a teaching license in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in French as one of two areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of French 221 and 222 or two of the 300-level courses, depending upon placement.

## **Pass/Fail Option**

Elective French courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree or who choose a French course to fulfill the cultural component may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

## Courses of Instruction

- 101, 102 Beginning French I, II (4,4)**  
A study of functional tasks that permit students to use French in appropriate, "real-life" situations. Special emphasis is placed on speaking and listening, followed by exercises to promote skill in reading and writing. This course is intended for students with fewer than two years of prior instruction in French.
- 201, 202 Intermediate French I, II (3,3)**  
A review of basic grammar and a study of intermediate functional skills. Special emphasis is placed on reading and writing followed by exercises to improve listening and speaking skills. This course is intended for students who have successfully completed two or more years of prior instruction in French. Prerequisite: FR 102 or departmental placement.
- 211 Intermediate Spoken French (1)**  
A course in the practice of speaking French for students enrolled in intermediate level courses. It is especially helpful to students new to Averett. Pass/Fail only, this course may be repeated once for credit. Prerequisite: FR 102 or equivalent.
- 221 Conversation and Listening (4)**  
A course intended to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level in speaking and listening proficiency. Video and audio materials, computer software, and contact with speakers outside of class enable students to improve their comprehension. Prerequisite: FR 202 or departmental placement.
- 222 Advanced Writing and Grammar (3)**  
A course intended to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level of proficiency in written French. Various activities allow the student to explore stylistic elements which affect the form and tone of the written word. The grammatical structures needed to perform particular written tasks are reviewed systematically. Prerequisite: FR 221 or departmental placement.
- 225 Introduction to French and Francophone Literature (3)**  
This course introduces students to a representative literary works from France and the French-speaking world. Activities and exercises based on the readings are designed to develop student awareness and appreciation of various styles and themes. Prerequisite: FR 221 or 222, departmental placement or permission of department chair.
- 317 French Civilization and Culture: Feudal Society through Absolute Monarchy (3)**  
This course will introduce the student to French society, institutions, and literature from the Middle Ages to the Revolution of 1789. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.
- 318 French Civilization and Culture: Revolution through the Fourth Republic (3)**  
This course will introduce the student to French society, institutions, and literature from the post-revolutionary era to the end of the Fourth Republic in 1958. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.
- 319 French Civilization and Culture: The Fifth Republic (3)**  
This course will complete the study of French society, institutions, and literature begun in FR 317. Period films, literary texts, and internet activities will supplement the study of historical events. Prerequisite or co-requisite: FR 222. Taught every third year.

---

---

## GREEK (GRK)

---

---

NOTE: Upon completion of **both** GRK 101, 102 **and** HEB 101, 102 a student may be considered to have met the foreign language requirement for the Bachelor of Arts degree. Students may register for Greek and Hebrew on Pass/Fail basis as for other foreign languages.

**101, 102 Introduction to Greek I, II (3,3)**

A study of the fundamentals of the Greek language with emphasis on vocabulary building and grammar. Practice readings will be from classical Greek and the Greek New Testament.

---

---

## HEALTH (HTH)

---

---

**110 Contemporary Health Problems (3)**

A course dealing with the contemporary health problems confronting today's educators, with consideration of such areas as the use and abuse of drugs, changing sexual mores, over- population, ecology, and mental health.

**200 First Aid and Safety (3)**

A study of the American Red Cross standard first aid course (for which certification is provided) plus additional information on emergency medical care and theory. Emphasis on developing an understanding of safety. Includes practical skills employed to care for injured persons as well as life support techniques.

**220 Health and Fitness for the 21st Century (4)**

A study of topics such as world-wide health problems, prevention and need for self-care in the early years, and promotion and maintenance of the well-being of the individual. Specific and general physical fitness activities will be included.

**320 Nutrition and Sports Performance (3)**

A course designed to teach nutrition and its effects upon athletic performance. Students will learn about foods, the diabetic athlete, steroids, and eating disorders that affect athletes. Students will also learn pre- and post-game meals, myths and facts.

---

---

## HEBREW (HEB)

---

---

NOTE: Upon completion of **both** GRK 101, 102 **and** HEB 101, 102 a student may be considered to have met the foreign language requirement for the Bachelor of Arts degree. Students may register for Greek and Hebrew on Pass/Fail basis as for other foreign languages.

**101, 102 Introduction to Hebrew I, II (3,3)**

A two-semester introduction to biblical Hebrew, emphasizing the grammar of the language. The purpose of the course is to enable the student to use Hebrew as a critical tool in the study of the Hebrew Bible.

---

---

# HISTORY (HIS)

---

---

Dr. Jack I. Hayes, *Chair*  
Dr. Richard A. Pfau  
Dr. William S. Trakas  
Dr. Darcy Wudel

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in History requires a minimum of 33 semester hours in history. A minimum of 15 semester hours of history courses on 300 and 400 level must be completed at Averett University. Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

The history curriculum provides a broad foundation in the Western heritage and depth in American and modern European history (1450-present). A student who takes courses in history at Averett University should be better prepared to master the art, literature, languages, and even business of the West, appreciate more fully the meaning and importance of the liberal arts, be better able to adapt himself or herself to society, appreciate the maxim that those who fail to learn from history's mistakes are doomed to repeat those mistakes, understand cause and effect on the national and international level, be prepared to solve social problems because of a fuller understanding of them, and possess a strong sense of identity as a citizen of the Western world.

Careers in business, education, government service, and, with further study, the law are open to students who major or minor in history.

## Requirements for a Major in History:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I.....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II .....	3
HIS 201, United States History I.....	3
HIS 202, United States History II .....	3
HIS 465, Seminar .....	3
History Electives .....	18
(Including advanced American History (6) and advanced European History (6))	
	Total 33

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II

Sophomore Year:

HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II

Junior Year:

HIS Elective, Advanced European History  
HIS Elective, Advanced European History  
HIS Elective, Advanced American History  
HIS 465, Seminar



Senior Year:

- HIS Elective, Advanced American History
- HIS Elective, Advanced European or American History
- HIS Elective, Advanced European or American History

**Requirements for a Major in History with a  
Secondary Teaching License in History and Social Science:**

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I.....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II .....	3
HIS 201, United States History I.....	3
HIS 202, United States History II .....	3
HIS 455, Political Development.....	3
History Electives as follows:.....	15
American History 300-400 level (6)	
European History 300-400 level (6)	
History Elective 300-400 level (3)	
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics <b>or</b>	
ECO 202, Principles of Macroeconomics .....	3
ED 180, Earth Science for Educators.....	2
POS 131, The World of Politics.....	3
POS 215, American National Government .....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government.....	1
POS 311, Comparative Government .....	3
POS 380, International Relations .....	3
REL 201, Religions of the World.....	3
Total	51

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in History/Social Science are explained in detail on pages 115.

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History/Social Science  
with a Teaching License**

Freshman Year:

- HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II
- TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications
- POS 131, The World of Politics
- Foreign Language (2 semesters)
- ENG 111-112, Introduction to Writing, Intro to Literature
- IDS 101, Freshman Topics
- Math 103 or higher
- Fine Arts course

Sophomore Year:

ECO 201 or 202, Principles of Microeconomics or  
Principles of Macroeconomics  
HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II  
One upper level History course  
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology  
ED 290, Foundations of Education  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology  
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics  
PE Fitness Course  
Foreign Language (if necessary)  
ENG 201 or 202, Major British Authors  
Laboratory Science course  
Fine Arts course  
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

Junior Year:

REL 101 or 102, Introduction to Old or New Testament  
Four upper level History courses  
POS 215, American National Government  
POS 216, State and Local Government  
POS 311, Comparative Government  
ED 180, Earth Science for Educators  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Area Reading  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
REL 201, Religions of the World

Senior Year:

CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
Two upper level History courses  
POS 380, International Relations  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## Minor

Students electing a minor in History must complete any 18 hours in History. The student may wish to concentrate in either American History or European History for the minor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

**101, 102 History of Western Civilization I, II (3,3)**

A survey of world history from the earliest times to 1715 (101) and 1715 to the present (102), emphasizing western civilization and the relevance of the past to contemporary life.

**112 Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II (1)**

A course designed to be taken concurrently with HIS 102, this course focuses on selected topics in Western history since 1715. Permission of instructor.

- 201, 202 United States History I, II (3,3)**  
 A survey of U.S. history from the colonial period to 1877 (201) and from 1877 to the present (202). Emphasis upon those aspects relevant to contemporary affairs.
- 312 Russian and Soviet History (3)**  
 A rapid survey from Russia's early history to 1801, then an intensive examination of Tsarist Russia (1801-1917), the Soviet Union (1917-1991), and the results of dissolution. Prerequisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.
- 322 English History, 1485 to Present (3)**  
 An examination of England's internal affairs and foreign policy, stressing her unique and important contributions to western--particularly Atlantic--civilization. Prerequisite or co-requisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.
- 323 Early Modern Europe (3)**  
 An examination of the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Scientific Revolution, the Enlightenment, the French Revolution and the Napoleonic era. Prerequisites: HIS 101, 102.
- 325 History of the German People (3)**  
 A study of the development of society in central Europe from the Middle Ages to the present. Emphasis is placed upon political, economic, philosophical, and cultural contributions of the 19th and 20th centuries. Prerequisites: HIS 101 and 102 or permission of the instructor.
- 333 Antebellum U.S. History, 1789-1848 (3)**  
 A detailed study of a fascinating period in America's history, with some stress on the first half of the 19th century as well as on the South as a unique region during these years before the Civil War. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.
- 360 Colonial, Revolutionary, and Constitutional History of the U.S. (3)**  
 An intensive examination of 17th and 18th century America, its colonial experience as well as its revolution, and the creation of its constitution. Some emphasis will be placed on the English origins which influenced both the colonial period and the constitution. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.
- 372 The New Nation: 1865-1917 (3)**  
 This course will explore American history from the end of the Civil War to the emergence of America as a dominant world power. Attention will be given to Reconstruction, the development of the modern American economy, Populism, Progressivism, and World War I. Prerequisite: HIS 202. Alternate years.
- 403 Nineteenth Century Europe (3)**  
 A study of this century from 1815 to 1914, when so much occurred that has affected our own time. Primary emphasis will be on the internal development and foreign relations of the Great Powers. Prerequisite: HIS 102. Alternate years.
- 405 Twentieth Century Europe, The War Years - 1914-1945 (3)**  
 A study of the causes, events, and effects of the two world wars, the rise of communism and fascism, and the era of economic depression. Prerequisite: HIS 102.
- 406 Twentieth Century Europe, Post War Divisions and Unions (3)**  
 A study of the cold war and Soviet domination of eastern Europe, the revolutions of 1989, the reunification of Germany, the collapse of the Soviet Union, and the move toward economic union. Prerequisite: HIS 102.

- 410 Twentieth Century U.S. History (1917 – Present) (3)**  
A contemporary view of the United States. Consideration of American post-industrial society, development of the welfare state, and world problems of a super power. Prerequisite: HIS 202. Alternate years.
- 414 Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898 (Same as POS 414) (3)**  
A study of the role of the United States in world affairs from the acquisition of empire to the present, with emphasis on the analysis of conflicting interpretations. Alternate years.
- 435 The American Civil War (1848 – 1865) (3)**  
A study of the causes, events, and effects of the most important event in nineteenth century America. Prerequisite: HIS 201. Alternate years.
- 455 Political Development (Same as POS 455) (3)**  
A study of the development of democracy in selected countries. Attention is given to the relationships between economic and social modernization and political change. Particular emphasis is placed on the experience of Africa, Asia, and Latin America. Prerequisite: junior or senior standing in history or political science, or the permission of the instructor.
- 465 Seminar (3)**  
Reading, discussion, and written analysis of secondary studies and primary sources on topics selected by the department with focus alternating between American and European themes. Offered each year as needed. Prerequisite: HIS 101-102, 201-202, three additional hours of upper level history courses, and junior status.

---



---

# HISTORY AND POLITICS

---



---

Dr. Fred Bolton  
 Dr. Jack Irby Hayes, *Chair*  
 Ms. Laura Meder  
 Dr. Richard Pfau

Dr. William S. Trakas  
 Dr. Steven D. Wray  
 Dr. Darcy Wudel

The Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in History and Politics requires 17 courses (47 semester hours) spread almost evenly across the two disciplines of political science and history. This curriculum provides breadth in various epochs of American and European history, along with depth in the theory and practice of politics.

Students majoring in History and Politics usually select careers in business, the non-profit sector, or government service, or they apply to graduate school in history, political science, or law.

Students may not double major in History, History and Politics, or Political Science. Students must attain at least a 2.0 GPA in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in History and Politics:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HIS 101, History of Western Civilization I.....	3
HIS 102, History of Western Civilization II .....	3
HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II .....	1
HIS 201, United States History I.....	3
HIS 202, United States History II .....	3
POS 131, The World of Politics.....	3
POS 215, American National Government .....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government.....	1
POS 220, American Government: Issues and Problems .....	3
HIS 465, Seminar <b>OR</b> HIS/POS 455, Political Development.....	3
HIS and POS Electives (no more than 12 hours in one discipline).....	<u>21</u>
Total	47

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: History and Politics

Freshman Year:

HIS 101, 102, History of Western Civilization I, II  
 HIS 112, Honors Seminar: History of Western Civilization II  
 POS 131, The World of Politics

Sophomore Year:

HIS 201, 202, United States History I, II  
 POS 215, American National Government  
 POS 216, State and Local Government  
 POS 220, American Government: Issues and Problems

Junior Year:

HIS 465, Seminar **OR** HIS/POS 455, Political Development  
 4 upper level history and/or political science courses

Senior Year:

3 upper level history and/or political science courses

---

---

# HONORS PROGRAM (HON)

---

---

Dr. William Trakas, *Director*

The Honors Program is governed by the Honors Committee, composed of five faculty members, representing various disciplines, and two students. Chaired by the director of the program, the committee is responsible for establishing long-term goals and themes of the Honors Program; for soliciting, reviewing, and approving all courses which are part of the Honors curriculum; and for reviewing and approving all student applications for admission.

## Student Admission

Entering freshmen may be accepted into the Honors Program by meeting either of the following:

1. High School grade point average of 3.2 or better and a combined SAT score of 1100 or better.
2. High School grade point average of 3.0 or better, a combined SAT score of 1050 or better and one of the following two criteria:
  - a. High School Rank in the top 15% of the graduating class, or
  - b. Completion of two Advanced Placement courses with accompanying Advanced Placement Test scores of 4 or better.

Sophomores and transfer juniors must meet three of the four criteria listed below to be admitted to the Honors Program.

1. Minimum overall college grade point average of 3.2.
2. Minimum grade point average of 3.4 in major.
3. Faculty sponsorship.
4. Completion of 6 hours Honors courses with grades of B or better.

## Provisional Admission

Students may be provisionally admitted to the Honors Program under several circumstances: (1) pending completion of one of the above criteria, (2) transfer students with high grade point averages who have no previous Honors work, or (3) other unanticipated circumstances. Terms for the provisional admission will be set by the Honors Committee at the time of the decision, and must specify the action(s) required and the time-limit for removing the provisional status.

## Continuation

Once admitted, the student must meet the following minimum requirements to continue in the Honors Program.

1. The student must make regular progress toward meeting the credit hour requirements of the Honors Program; at least one Honors course shall be taken each academic year as an indication of regular progress.
2. The student may have no more than two grades of C in courses used to satisfy Honors program requirements (this policy preempts the Honors grade point average requirement).
3. The student must maintain an overall grade point average of 3.2, a major grade point average of 3.4, and an Honors grade point average of 3.0.

## General Requirements

To earn the Honors distinction, approximately 20% of all coursework attempted at Averett University must carry Honors credit.

Students may enter the Honors Program at the beginning of the freshman or sophomore years or as a transfer in the junior year; however, total hours required for Honors distinction is based on the total number of hours a student takes at Averett University. The following table outlines this policy.

### Honors Distinction Requirements

Total Averett Hours Earned	Total Honors Hours Required
108 - 123	24
93 - 107	21
78 - 92	18
60 - 77	15

Students transferring with Honors credit from other institutions must complete the appropriate number of Averett University Honors hours based on the number of total hours earned while enrolled at Averett.

In addition to the total hours required, students must meet the additional requirements as listed below.

1. Freshman Colloquium, HON 101, is required for all students except those who transfer in 60 or more credit hours.
2. All Honors students, regardless of the total number of Honors hours earned, must complete the following Honors courses:

Honors 397, Senior Project Proposal Preparation	1 hour
Honors 401, Senior Honors Project	3 hours
Honors 402, Senior Colloquium	3-6 hours
3. The student may earn no more than 50% of all Honors hours in the declared major.
4. The philosophy of the Averett University Honors Program embraces far more than a sequence of coursework. Honors students will be provided opportunities for and required to participate in a number of out-of-classroom experiences each year.

## Honors Curriculum

The Honors curriculum is composed of courses that satisfy both general education, major requirements and general elective hours. Honors courses offered in academic departments are numbered 198, 298, 398, or 498. Enrollment in individual Honors courses are open by permission of the instructor to other students if space is available in the class.

## Sample Four Year Course Sequence:

Freshman Year:  
Honors 101 (second semester)

Sophomore Year:

Honors Electives from approved offerings (first semester)  
Honors 201

Junior Year:

Honors Electives or Honors courses in major (first semester)  
Honors 301 or Honors Electives or Honors courses in major (second semester)  
Honors 397 (second semester)

Senior Year:

Honors Electives and/or Senior Honors Project (first semester)  
Honors 401 and/or Honors 402 (second semester)

## Courses of Instruction

**100 Introduction to Honors (1)**

A theme-based, issue-focused, interdisciplinary course designed for freshmen admitted to the Honors Program or considering applying to the Honors Program. Students will experience some of the learning activities that Honors courses offer and will be introduced to the activities, events, and policies of the Honors Program.

**101 Freshman Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course that introduces the Honors student to the challenges and expectations of the Honors Program.

**201 Sophomore Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course which broadens the students' knowledge of some area of the arts and sciences. Topics will be proposed annually by the faculty for approval by the Honors Committee. Prerequisite: Honors 101 or permission of the Director of the Honors Program.

**301 Junior Colloquium (3)**

A theme-based, issue-focused interdisciplinary course which broadens the students' knowledge of some area of the arts. Prerequisite: Honors 201 or permission of the Director of the Honors Program

**401 Senior Honors Project (3)**

A student-designed project demonstrating original and/or creative work of substance. The Seniors Honors Project will be proposed, and upon completion, presented in the student's department of major study and in the broader forum of the Senior Colloquium, Honors 402. Approval for the Seniors Honors Project must be obtained from the major department and from the Honors Committee. The grade for this course will be awarded on successful completion of the Seniors Honors Project, including completion of the paper and presentation of results before the Project Committee and the Honors Committee.

**402 Senior Colloquium (3-6)**

A multi-disciplinary, required senior seminar for all Honors candidates, focused around research or performance in their major field. Students will write the paper that completes the Senior Honors Project and make oral presentations based on work on the project. Prerequisite or Corequisite: Honors 401.



---

---

# HUMAN-COMPUTER INTERACTION PROGRAM (HCI)

---

---

Human-Computer Interaction (HCI) is an interdisciplinary field of study that prepares students to work in teams that design, assess, and redesign attractive, easy-to-use software and web sites. Through exposure to principles of design, human behavior, and computer science, the HCI program produces students that understand design principles for creating pleasing and usable software, implementation requirements, and human-computer interaction principles.

Averett University offers a HCI program for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the program in order to graduate.

## Degree Requirements

Complete the requirements for a major in art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The following courses are required in addition to the major:

### Foundation courses (10 hours)

	Credit Hours
ART 100, The Visual Arts .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming .....	4

### Human-Computer Interaction courses (9 hours)

PSY 232, Designing User-centered Web Sites.....	3
PSY 332, Evaluating Web Site Usability .....	3
PSY 373, Memory and Cognition .....	3

### Electives (15-18 hours)

Select five of the approved electives below from departments other than your primary major.

#### Design

ART 110, Basic Drawing .....	3
ART 120, Basic Design.....	3
ART 130, Three-dimensional Design .....	3
ART 270, Applied Design.....	3

#### Human Behavior

PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science.....	4
PSY 219, Social Psychology .....	3
PSY 338, Research Design.....	3
PSY 323, Learning .....	3
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception .....	3

#### Computer Science

CSS114, Web Authoring and Office Applications.....	3
CSS 212, Introduction to Programming II .....	4
CSS 231, Programming in C++.....	4
CSS 235, Programming in JAVA.....	4
CSS 305, Concepts of Information Systems .....	3
CSS 375, Principles of Databases .....	3

Total 34-37

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

### **Human-Computer Interaction**

#### Freshman Year:

ART 100, Visual Arts (fall and spring)  
PSY 232, Designing User-centered Web Sites  
Human Behavior Elective  
Design Elective

#### Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)  
CSS 211, Introduction to Programming  
Design Electives  
Computer Science Electives  
Human Behavior Elective

#### Junior Year:

PSY 373, Memory and Cognition  
PSY 332, Evaluating Web Site Usability  
Computer Science Electives  
Human Behavior Electives

#### Senior Year:

Computer Science Electives  
Human Behavior Electives

---

---

## **INTERDISCIPLINARY STUDIES (IDS)**

---

---

These courses are specifically designed to offer students the opportunity to study a variety of subject matter from an interdisciplinary perspective.

### **Courses of Instruction**

**103            Prior Learning Assessment (Janet Roberson, Coordinator)            (3)**

This course is an introduction to prior learning assessment and the standards used to evaluate prior learning. Students will enhance the development of critical thinking and life-long learning skills through the creation of a learning portfolio of documentation, including an essay. Students will then be able to decide if they believe they have sufficient experiences to submit their portfolio for evaluation of further college level credits.

**290            Creative Expression in Art and Music            (3)**

The music portion of this course will focus on elements of melody, harmony, rhythm, dynamics, timbre, and form. Vocal, instrumental, listening, and movement activities will be incorporated to explore the creative process of combining these various elements of musical expression. The art portion of the course will focus on developing the elements and principles into two-dimensional and three-dimensional form. Various materials and techniques will be explored. Studio hours are scheduled for the art segment. Does not meet General Education requirements. Prerequisites: ART 100 and MUS 100.

---

---

# JOURNALISM (JR)

---

---

Mr. Michael G. Hammonds  
Dr. David E. Hoffman

The purpose of this major is to prepare students as generalists in mass media. Students will be trained for both print and broadcast media professions, and the courses will incorporate both theory and practice. Emphasis in most courses will be upon writing. Students who complete the degree will be eligible for jobs in a variety of settings including newspaper offices, television and radio broadcast facilities, and organizations requiring writing, desktop publishing, and public relations skills. Students may also choose to enter graduate school.

Students must attain at least a 2.50 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Journalism:

In addition to general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
JR 110, Introduction to Media.....	3
JR 115, News and Feature Writing .....	3
JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper (1) (Three semester hours must be completed) .....	3
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs .....	3
JR 230, Editing and Layout.....	3
JR 310, Broadcasting .....	3
JR 330, Media Law and Ethics.....	3
JR 440, Internship .....	3
Electives to be selected from the following .....	9
JR 203, Film Studies	
JR 210, Photography	
JR 220, Public Relations	
JR 411, Magazine Article Writing	
Electives to be selected from the following .....	<u>6</u>
English (200 level or above)	
Political Science (200 level or above)	
History (200 level or above)	
Sociology (200 level or above)	
Psychology (200 level or above)	
Economics (200 level or above)	
	Total 39

NOTE: To be admitted to Journalism courses numbered 300 or higher, students must have a grade of C or better in both ENG 111 and JR 115, and they must submit a portfolio of work completed in JR 115 and/or work completed for JR 152 or a professional publication. Students may also be admitted to 300-400 level courses with special permission from the instructor.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Journalism

Freshman Year:

JR 110, Introduction to Media  
JR 115, News and Feature Writing  
JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper

Sophomore Year:

- JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper
- JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs
- JR 230, Editing and Layout
- Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

- JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper
- JR 310, Broadcasting
- JR 330, Media Law and Ethics
- Recommended Electives

Senior Year:

- JR 440, Internship
- Recommended Electives

**Minor**

The following courses are required for the minor in Journalism:

JR 110, Introduction to Media.....	3
JR 115, News and Feature Writing .....	3
JR 152, Student Publications: Newspaper (1) (Three semester hours must be completed) .....	3
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs .....	3
JR 230, Editing and Layout.....	3

Students must take a minimum of 6 semester hours from the following courses or from any special studies courses offered.

JR 210, Photography .....	3
JR 220, Public Relations .....	3
JR 310, Broadcasting .....	3
JR 411, Magazine Article Writing .....	3
JR 440, Internship .....	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>21</b>

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

**Teacher Licensure Endorsement**

Students seeking teacher licensure must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Journalism may be added.

For an added endorsement in Journalism, students must complete all requirements for the minor.

**Courses of Instruction**

**110 Introduction to Media (3)**  
 A course that deals with the historical, social, legal and economic development of the mass media including newspapers, magazines, television, cable and satellite communication, radio, advertising, and public relations.

- 115 News and Feature Writing (3)**  
A foundation writing course in which students are introduced to journalistic style, interviewing techniques, news writing, feature writing, and investigative reporting.
- 152 Student Publications: Newspaper (1-6)**  
An opportunity for students to work on the university newspaper while receiving credit. A maximum of six semester hours of credit may be earned, with no more than one hour earned per semester. Students will have the opportunity to carry out all tasks necessary for putting together a student newspaper.
- 203 Film Studies (3)**  
A course designed for students to examine film from artistic and cultural perspectives. The course incorporates films from various times and genres. Films that will be studied include *Public Enemy*, *Out of the Past*, *The Day the Earth Stood Still*, *Rebel Without a Cause*, *Invasion of the Body Snatchers*, *The Searchers*, and *The Wild Bunch*.
- 210 Photography (3)**  
A basic study of 35mm photography which includes instruction in camera-handling, developing and printing black and white negatives, composition, lighting, and print manipulation. Students must provide a single lens reflex camera and materials. Permission of instructor. Lab fee charges. Alternate years.
- 220 Public Relations (3)**  
A course designed to give students the opportunity to combine theory and practice in developing public relations skills. Its purpose is to introduce students to the field of public relations through a study of the historical background and current image of public relations, and the laws and ethics of public relations. Students will learn the basics of writing for public relations and will put together graphic materials such as annual reports, brochures, and manuals. Alternate years.
- 225 Editorial and Current Affairs (3)**  
A course in which the emphasis is upon opinion writing (editorials, columns, criticism [e.g., movie reviews, book reviews, music reviews]). Students are introduced to research techniques required of opinion writers in the mass media, which include keeping up with current events. Students are required to keep up with current affairs on the campus, in the community, in the state and nation, and in the world. Prerequisite: JR 115.
- 230 Editing and Layout (3)**  
An opportunity to develop graphic creativity by learning the basic elements of page layout and design, by learning how to write ancillary copy (e.g., headlines, captions and subheads), and by learning the major parts of desktop publishing by using Aldus *Pagemaker* and/or other desktop publishing programs. Students in this class get hands-on experience in layout by working with *The Chanticleer*, the student newspaper. Prerequisite: JR 115.
- 310 Broadcasting (3)**  
A course which introduces students to basic news and script writing for radio and television. The exercise of news judgment and preparation of scripts for broadcast will be key elements of the course. In addition, this course will provide hands-on experience in writing and taping news and feature items, commercials, promotions, and public service.
- 330 Media Law and Ethics (3)**  
Students will study various key federal and state cases relating to print and broadcast media. They will use a law library for research. In addition to learning the rights of journalists, students will also be taught the responsibilities of the media in modern society, and they will deal with the ethical issues related to the mass media. Alternate years.

**411 Magazine Article Writing (3)**

An opportunity for students to write and market nonfiction articles for general periodicals. Magazine analysis, writing style development, and manuscript preparation are areas which will be covered. Alternate years.

**440 Internship (3)**

An opportunity for working and training with media. Students will perform assigned duties in a communications organization approved by the college and the department. Direction and evaluation will be a joint responsibility of the college instructor and the work supervisor. Prerequisites: 18 hours of Journalism courses, junior or senior status, 2.0 cumulative grade point average, and permission of instructor.

---



---

# LEADERSHIP STUDIES (LDR)

---



---

Averett University offers an interdisciplinary minor of eighteen hours in Leadership Studies. It consists of an academic component, experiential learning and mentoring. Students have the opportunity to gain self-knowledge through a consideration of the theory and practice of leadership. The curriculum of this minor includes offerings from various departments and utilizes the talents of faculty, staff and administration in an effort to assist students in gaining leadership experience. The minor has at its core a list of leadership competencies that students are to develop. The competencies are as follows:

1. Students will possess the ability to think critically.
2. Students will possess and be able to articulate to others a personal leadership philosophy.
3. Students will have knowledge of leadership theories and an understanding of the application of various styles of leadership.
4. Students will be open-minded, tolerant of others, and will understand and appreciate individual differences and diverse points of view.
5. Students will be visionary, understanding the process of developing personal and professional goals.
6. Students will possess strong interpersonal skills.
7. Students will understand the dynamics of teams and be able to function within a group setting.
8. Students will be decisive and possess sound judgment.

## Admission

In order to be admitted to the Leadership Studies minor, a student must declare the minor in the Registrar's Office. The Chair of the Leadership Studies Coordinating Committee will advise the student with regard to the minor.

## Requirements for a Minor in Leadership Studies:

	Semester Hours
LDR 201, Emerging Leader Experience .....	1
PSY 200, Effective Behavior .....	3
LDR 301, Leadership in Action—On Campus .....	1
LDR 302, Leadership in Action—Off Campus.....	1
POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership.....	3
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership .....	3
LDR 440, Leadership Seminar .....	3
One three-hour course selected by the student in consultation with his/her advisor from a list of courses approved by the Curriculum Committee under guidelines developed by the Leadership Studies Coordinating Committee. Courses in the following list have already been approved.....	3
JR 220, Public Relations	
JR 225, Editorial and Current Affairs	
PHL 210, Ethics	
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology	
TH 300, Public Speaking	
PE 365, Sport Psychology	
<b>Total</b>	<b>18</b>

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.



## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

### Freshman Year:

LDR 201, Emerging Leader Experience  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior

### Sophomore Year:

LDR 301, Leadership in Action On-Campus  
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Leadership

### Junior Year:

LDR 302, Leadership in Action Off-Campus  
POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership

### Senior Year:

LDR 440, Leadership Seminar  
JR 220, Public Relations **or**  
JR 225 Editorial and Current Affairs **or**  
PHL 210 Ethics **or**  
PE 365, Sport Psychology **or**  
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology

## Courses of Instruction

- 201 Emerging Leader Experience (1)**  
Classroom work combined with participation in an organization or project. Emphasis is on understanding and beginning the development of leadership competencies. This course and PSY 200 are the most appropriate entry points to the minor.
- 301 Leadership in Action—On Campus (1)**  
Student assumes a leadership role in an on-campus organization or project. Continuing, supervised development of leadership competencies is stressed. Prerequisites: LDR 201.
- 302 Leadership in Action—Off Campus (1)**  
Student assumes a leadership role in an off-campus organization or project. Continuing, supervised development of leadership competencies is stressed. Prerequisites: LDR 201.
- 440 Leadership Seminar (3)**  
An internship experience combined with discussions and presentations given in a seminar format. The capstone course for the minor. Prerequisites: PSY 200, LDR 201, LDR 301, LDR 302, BSA 326, POS 325.

---

---

# MATHEMATICS (MTH)

---

---

Dr. Donald T. Ethington, *Chair*  
Mrs. Tonja M. Hudson  
Mr. Steven R. Lemery  
Mrs. Susan E. Osborne  
Dr. Gary A. Tucker

The Mathematics Department offers a variety of courses and programs, including three majors, Mathematics, Mathematics with Teaching Licensure at the Secondary Level, Mathematical Decision Science, and one minor in mathematics.

In addition, the Mathematics and the Education Departments offer a graduate degree in education, Master of Education with a Mathematics Concentration

In all math-related majors and programs, students will communicate mathematics clearly and effectively, encounter a variety of learning experiences and use mathematics in a technological environment.

The mathematics major is a traditional course of study with emphasis on both theory and application. The program requires students to master the techniques of mathematics, apply these techniques to real problems, and understand the underlying theory. This major is an excellent choice for those planning to attend graduate school in a variety of areas, wishing to develop their abilities in logic, wanting to expand their horizons by way of mathematics, or using mathematics as a companion area for another major.

The mathematics major with teaching licensure at the secondary level is equivalent to the traditional mathematics major but is designed for students planning to teach mathematics at the secondary level. A student who has graduated from Averett's mathematics/teacher licensure program and is certified to teach in the state of Virginia may transfer that licensure to 38 states and the District of Columbia.

The mathematical decision science major is an interdisciplinary program for students with a combined interest in mathematics and the quantitative areas of business. This is an excellent choice for students interested in quantitative reasoning in the public or private sector.

The Mathematics Department believes the strengths of its programs are a direct result of its dedicated students, small classes which allow good student-faculty relationships, personal attention from a faculty that places emphasis on quality teaching, integration of technology into the curriculum, and a faculty that is interested in and constantly aware of individual progress.

A student who chooses to major in a mathematics program may elect either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree. The student is encouraged to select an option of either a major or minor in another field, or additional study in related areas. In particular, a major or minor in computer science is an excellent area for applications of mathematics.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Mathematics:

In addition to the General Education requirements, the following courses are required.

	Semester Hours
MTH 201, Calculus I.....	3
MTH 202, Calculus II.....	3
MTH 301, Calculus III.....	3
MTH 311, 312, Abstract Algebra I, II.....	6
MTH 315, 316, Theory of Real Variables I, II.....	6
MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus.....	3
Mathematics Elective, 200+ level.....	3
Mathematics Electives, 400 level.....	<u>6</u>
Total	33

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in mathematics.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Mathematics

Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II

Sophomore Year:

MTH 200+ Elective  
MTH 301, Calculus III  
MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus

Junior Year:

MTH 311, 312, Abstract Algebra I, II  
MTH 400+ Elective

Senior Year:

MTH 315, 316, Theory of Real Variables I, II  
MTH 400+ Elective

## Requirements for a Major in Mathematics with a Teaching

### License at the Secondary Level:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
MTH 201, Calculus I.....	3
MTH 202, Calculus II.....	3
MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics.....	3
MTH 301, Calculus III.....	3
MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I.....	3
MTH 312, Abstract Algebra II <b>or</b> MTH 316, Theory of Real Variables II.....	3
MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I.....	3
MTH 401, Geometry.....	3
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics.....	3
Mathematics Electives, 300-400 level.....	<u>6</u>
Total	33

Suggested electives: Courses in computer science, computer information systems, chemistry, physics, psychology, biology, business, and additional courses in education and mathematics..

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license in Mathematics are explained in detail on pages 115.

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

### **Mathematics with a Teaching License**

#### Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications

#### Sophomore Year:

MTH 211, Foundations of Higher Mathematics  
MTH 301, Calculus III  
MTH 300+ Elective  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology  
ED 290, Foundations of Education  
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics  
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems

#### Junior Year:

MTH 311, Abstract Algebra I  
MTH 312, Abstract Algebra II\*  
MTH 401, Geometry  
MTH 300+ Elective\*\*  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education  
PE Fitness Course

#### Senior Year:

MTH 315, Theory of Real Variables I  
MTH 316, Theory of Real Variables II\*  
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics  
MTH 300+ Elective\*\*  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

\* Take only one

\*\*Take only one

## Requirements for a Major in Mathematical Decision Science:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting .....	3
BSA 370, Principles of Finance .....	3
BSA 366, Production and Operations Management.....	3
BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making.....	3
BSA Elective to be selected from the following .....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management	
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing	
BSA 322, Managerial Accounting	
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory and Management	
ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics .....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputer and Application Software .....	3
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
CSS Elective at the 200-400 level.....	3
MTH 201, 202, 301, Calculus I, II, III.....	9
MTH 302, Linear Algebra.....	3
MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus .....	3
MTH 403, Probability and Statistics .....	3
MTH Elective at the 300-400 level .....	3
	Total 48

Suggested electives: Additional courses in computer science, computer information systems, business, economics, and mathematics.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:

### Mathematical Decision Science

#### Freshman Year:

MTH 201, 202, Calculus I, II  
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software+  
 BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I

#### Sophomore Year:

MTH 301, Calculus III  
 ECO 201, Principles of Microeconomics  
 MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics  
 MTH 302, Linear Algebra

#### Junior Year:

BSA 370, Principles of Finance  
 BSA 366, Production and Operations Management  
 MTH 322, Multivariable Calculus  
 CSS Elective at 200-400 level

#### Senior Year:

BSA 402, Quantitative Decision Making  
 BSA Recommended Elective  
 MTH 403, Probability and Statistics  
 MTH Elective at 300-400 level

## Minor

The department offers a minor in mathematics for those students desiring a strong support area for their major. Students electing a minor in mathematics must complete 18 semester hours in mathematics including MTH 201, 202, 211, 301, and 6 additional hours at the 300 or 400 level.

Students must attain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Master's Degrees in Education

Averett offers a Master of Education with a concentration of 18 graduate hours in mathematics. See [The Catamount](#) for more information on graduate studies in education.

## Courses of Instruction

### **100 Fundamentals of Mathematics (3)**

A course designed to review and develop mathematical skills needed for college algebra. Topics include properties of the real number system, graphing, word problems, and selected topics in beginning algebra. Credits are not computed in the grade point average and are not counted toward the 123 semester hour graduation requirement.

### **103 Principles of Mathematics (3)**

A first course in college mathematics focusing on functions and their applications. Topics include equations, graphing, relations, and functions with an emphasis on polynomial, logarithmic, and exponential functions. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 100 or placement.

### **104 Precalculus Mathematics (3)**

A course designed for those students requiring a knowledge of precalculus mathematics with an emphasis on functions and their applications. Topics include advanced algebra, trigonometry, and analytical geometry. This course is intended for those students planning to take MTH 201. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or placement.

### **111, 112 Theory of Modern Mathematics I, II (3,3)**

A course designed to develop a basic understanding of mathematical systems (including a development of the natural number system, the integers, and the rational, real, and complex number systems), number theory, probability and statistics, geometry, technology, and the role of deductive and inductive reasoning. Prerequisite: MTH 100 or placement in MTH 103.

### **160 Introduction to Statistics (3)**

A first course in statistics. Topics include permutations, combinations, distributions, (binomial, normal, Student's t, chi-square, and F), sampling, hypothesis testing, significance levels, confidence intervals, regression and correlation. Does not count toward minor in Computer Science. Prerequisite: MTH 103 or equivalent.

### **171 Applied Calculus (3)**

A study of the basic principles of calculus and their applications. Designed especially for the student desiring a one semester exposure to the fundamental concepts of calculus. Topics include limits, continuity, differentiation of algebraic, logarithmic, and exponential functions. The TI-89 graphing calculator is required. Prerequisite: MTH 103.

(NOTE: Credit will not be awarded for MTH 171 after receiving credit for MTH 201.)







---

---

# MEDICAL TECHNOLOGY

---

---

Dr. James Caldwell, *Coordinator*

The University offers a Bachelor of Science degree with a major in Medical Technology through an affiliation with AHC/King's Daughter's Hospital, Fishersville, Virginia. Students may also have the opportunity to attend other accredited hospital programs. The program is designed to follow the standard procedure for the Bachelor of Science degree in Medical Technology--three years of college work and one year of clinical instruction and practice at a teaching hospital.

Although the University maintains the above affiliations with hospital programs, admission to the clinical year is not guaranteed by the University. Each student is responsible for applying and gaining admission to the clinical year program at an accredited teaching hospital. Faculty in the Department of Biology will provide assistance to students seeking a clinical year affiliation.

The University will grant the equivalent of one year of college credit (30 semester hours) for the clinical period if the student is admitted to the program in an approved teaching hospital and satisfactorily completes the required work. During the fall semester of the senior year, the student must register for MT 400, Clinical Experience, and will pay a \$5.00 lab fee. This course carries no credit, nor is tuition charged for it.

In addition to the General Education requirements, a student must complete the courses listed below prior to the clinical year. Additional courses may be required for admission by specific teaching hospitals. The program is approved by the Board of Registry of Medical Technology and the American Society of Clinical Pathologists. The Medical Technology program of Averett University is part of the Department of Biology.

All students must attain a minimum grade point average of 2.50 for all courses taken at Averett University in the major in order to graduate. These major courses include all required for the degree, as well as all taken as electives from Biology, Environmental Sciences, and Chemistry and General College Physics I and II.

All seniors shall take a comprehensive examination administered by the faculty of the department. The subject matter for the examination will encompass all required core courses for the degree. The examination will be taken after the completion of the junior year and prior to beginning the year of clinical training. The student is required to make 65 out of a possible 90 points to pass. Any student who does not pass the examination will be given an opportunity to repeat the examination during the next semester. Given the timing of the examination, all core courses should be completed prior to the senior year.

Any student who does not pass the comprehensive examination or who fails to meet the minimum grade point average requirement of 2.50 may remain in the program until these criteria are met, providing the minimum requirements of the University are maintained.

## Requirements for a Major in Medical Technology:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 103, General Zoology.....	4
BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II.....	8
BIO 301, Microbiology .....	4
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry, I, II.....	8
Eight Hours from the following: .....	8
CH 201, 202, Quantitative Analysis and Laboratory	
CH 401, Biochemistry	
CH 301, 303, Organic Chemistry I and Laboratory	
CH 302, 304, Organic Chemistry II and Laboratory	
Clinical experience (at hospital lab).....	30
MT 400, Clinical Experience .....	<u>0</u>
	Total 66

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Medical Technology

Freshman Year:

BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
BIO 103, General Zoology  
CH 101, 102, General Chemistry I, II

Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology I, II  
BIO 301, Microbiology

Junior Year:

Eight hours of upper level Chemistry courses from the list above

Senior Year:

Clinical experience (at hospital lab)  
MT 400, Clinical Experience

### Courses of Instruction

#### **400 Clinical Experience (0)**

An opportunity for clinical experience in a hospital laboratory. Students who are enrolled at an approved hospital laboratory must register for this course in the fall semester of their senior year. The purpose of this registration is to assure communication with the student. No credit is awarded nor is any tuition charged. There is a fee.

---

---

# MUSIC (MUS)

---

---

Dr. S. Gail Allen, *Chair*  
Ms. Anne Lewis  
Dr. Timothy D. Montgomery

Located in the Emily Swain Grousbeck Music Center, the Department of Music offers a Bachelor of Arts degree with a major in music which has an emphasis in three performance areas: Piano, Organ, and Voice. Two areas of concentration are available: Church Music and Performance. Graduates can expect to be prepared for vocational goals such as leadership positions in the field of church music or private teaching and performance. These concentrations are also designed for students who want to further their education in graduate school or seminary.

The music program offers performance opportunities for students in choral and handbell choirs that perform both on and off campus. Opportunities are available for keyboard and voice students to work in area churches.

An audition is required for admission into the Music program. Auditions can be arranged directly with the Chair of the Music Department after a student has been admitted to the University. For students whose principal instrument of study is piano, the audition should include major scales in all keys, and literature at least comparable to Clementi sonatinas and Bach's "Two-Part Invention No. 8." For students whose principal instrument of study is voice, the audition should include a piece comparable to the repertoire found in 24 Italian Songs and Arias and a sacred solo or oratorio solo comparable to "He Shall Feed His Flock" or "O Rest In the Lord."

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Music:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

Common Core Requirements of all students majoring in Music:

	Semester Hours
MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature.....	3
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music .....	1
MUS 207, Basic Conducting.....	2
MUS 260, Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque .....	3
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Twentieth Century.....	3
MUS 270, Music Theory I.....	4
MUS 270L, Music Theory I Lab.....	0
MUS 271, Music Theory II.....	4
MUS 271L, Music Theory II Lab .....	0
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musicians .....	2
MUS 370, Music Theory III.....	3
MUS 371, Music Theory IV .....	3
	Total 28

In addition to the core requirements, the student must elect one of the concentrations described below.

## Church Music Concentration

	Semester Hours
Core Requirements.....	28
Applied Music.....	12
(Principal Instrument - 8 hours)	
(Secondary Instrument - 4 hours)	
Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163).....	8
MUS 215, Church Music Seminar I (Instrumental Methods) .....	1
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II (Children).....	1
MUS 380, Church Music .....	3
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting.....	2
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy .....	3
MUS 461, 462 Internship (1,1) .....	<u>2</u>
Total	60

## Performance Concentration

	Semester Hours
Core Requirements.....	28
Applied Music.....	18
(Principal Instrument - 14 hours)	
(Secondary Instrument - 4 hours)	
Ensemble (MUS 161 and/or 163).....	6
MUS 480, Senior Recital .....	1
Music Electives .....	<u>2-3</u>
(To be selected from MUS 380, Church Music;	Total 55-56
MUS 215, Music Seminar I;	
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II;	
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting;	
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy)	

## Minor

Students selecting a minor in Music must complete 21 semester hours in Music, including the following courses:

	Semester Hours
MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature.....	3
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music .....	1
MUS 260, Music History: Medieval, Renaissance, and Baroque <b>or</b>	
MUS 261, Music History: Classical, Romantic, and Modern .....	3
MUS 270, Music Theory I .....	4
MUS 270L, Music Theory I Lab.....	0
MUS 271, Music Theory II.....	4
MUS 271L, Music Theory II Lab .....	0
MUS 131-432, Piano, <b>or</b>	
MUS 141-442, Organ <b>or</b>	
MUS 151-452, Voice .....	3
Elective.....	3
(To be selected from the following:	
MUS 131-432, Piano; MUS 141-442, Organ; MUS 151-452, Voice; MUS 161, Averett Singers; MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir; MUS 207, Basic Conducting; MUS 370, Music Theory III; MUS 371, Music Theory IV; MUS 380 Church Music)	

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Music

### Church Music Concentration

#### Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)  
Applied Music, Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature  
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

#### Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 207, Basic Conducting  
MUS 260, 261, Music History  
MUS 270, 271L, Music Theory I and Lab  
MUS 271, 271L, Music Theory II and Lab  
MUS 215, Church Music Seminar I

#### Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician  
MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV  
MUS 315, Church Music Seminar II

#### Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (1 hour per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 380, Church Music  
MUS 407, Advanced Choral Conducting  
MUS 420, Hymnody/Liturgy  
MUS 461, 462, Internship I, II

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Music

### Music Performance Concentration

#### Freshman Year:

Applied Music, Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)  
Applied Music, Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 100, Introduction to Music Literature  
MUS 104, Fundamentals of Music

Sophomore Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 207, Basic Conducting  
MUS 260, 261, Music History  
MUS 270, 271L, Music Theory I and Lab  
MUS 271, 271L, Music Theory II and Lab

Junior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument (2 hours per semester)  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS 307, Choral Conducting for the Church Musician  
MUS 370, 371, Music Theory III, IV

Senior Year:

Applied Music: Principal Instrument  
Applied Music: Secondary Instrument  
MUS 161, Averett Singers **and/or**  
MUS 163, Averett Handbell Choir  
MUS Electives  
MUS 480, Senior Recital

Enrollment in the Music program is limited and **an audition is required** for admission to the major. The prospective student should audition in the spring semester before entering in the fall. Auditions can be arranged directly with the music faculty after a student has been admitted to the University. Admissions Open House weekends are good times to schedule auditions. Auditions may be held as late as registration for the first semester of attendance; however, admission to the Music major is dependent upon a successful audition.

## Courses of Instruction

### **100 Introduction to Music Literature (3)**

A general survey of the history of Western music from the Middle Ages to the present. Emphasis will be upon important composers and musical styles with attention given to the development of skills in listening to music. This course satisfies 3 hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education.

### **104 Fundamentals of Music (1)**

A study of fundamental musical skills including pitch notation, rhythmic notation, keyboard orientation, interval recognition, scales, key signatures, and basic music terminology. Prerequisite for MUS 270 and corequisite for 100 level applied music. Students may be exempt from this course based on a placement test administered to all incoming music majors. This course may be an elective for the general student body.

### **118 Class Piano For Beginners (1)**

An introduction to the fundamental skills in playing the piano. No prior knowledge of music reading skills or piano technique is necessary for the successful completion of the course. Students are instructed in a group setting.

**131-431\* Piano (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the piano at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for piano, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**132-432\* Piano (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the piano at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for piano, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**141-441\* Organ (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the organ at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for organ, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**142-442\* Organ (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the organ at any given proficiency level. Technique, scales, concepts of theory for organ, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**151-451\* Voice (1)**

A study of standard classical literature for the voice at any given proficiency level. Vocal techniques, breathing, tone placement, diction, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 30-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

**152-452\* Voice (2)**

A study of standard classical literature for the voice at any given proficiency level. Vocal techniques, breathing, tone placement, diction, and literature survey are emphasized. Includes one 60-minute private lesson per week. May be repeated for credit at each level. A lab fee will be assessed. Non-music majors may enroll as space permits. Enrollment for all students is by permission of instructor.

\*Applied music courses are numbered according to this system: The first number defines the level (freshman, sophomore, etc), the second number defines the instrument (3 = piano, 4 = organ, 5 = voice), the third number defines the number of credit hours.

**161 Averett Singers (1)**

A course designed to offer instruction and experience in ensemble singing and provide a means of individual expression through musical performance. Membership is open to any student upon completion of an audition. May be repeated for a maximum of 8 semester hours credit.

**163 Averett Handbell Choir (1)**

A course designed to offer instruction and experience in the ringing of handbells and to provide a means of individual and ensemble expression through music. Membership is open to any student upon completion of an audition. May be repeated for a maximum of 8 semester hours credit.

- 191 Beginning Classical Guitar (1)**  
An introduction to playing the classical guitar. Right and left hand techniques and concepts of musical notation particular to the instrument are emphasized. A thirty-minute private lesson per week includes reading music, playing solos, duets and scales. Over the course of the semester the student is introduced to standard guitar literature through listening activities and concerts. This course may be repeated once for credit. Permission of instructor.
- 207 Basic Conducting (2)**  
A study of fundamental conducting skills including basic beat patterns and gestural techniques including preparation, release, and cueing. This course will meet 3 hours per week, and is open to the general student population.
- 215 Church Music Seminar I (1)**  
An introduction to methods, techniques, organizational strategies, and materials appropriate for use in a church instrumental program. The use of handbells and Orff instruments will be emphasized.
- 260 Music History: Renaissance and Baroque (3)**  
A study of the historical information and the actual music of the Renaissance and Baroque periods by examination of important movements that influenced the patronage and function of music, musical devices, forms and composers. Specific works with clearly observable stylistic features are studied as illustrations of historically significant genres, styles, or techniques. This course satisfies 3 hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: MUS 100 or permission of instructor.
- 261 Music History: Classical, Romantic and Modern (3)**  
A study of developments in the history of Western music in the 18th, 19th, and 20th centuries with a detailed study of forms, styles, and composers in representative musical literature. Special attention will be given to opera, the symphony, and solo literature. Emphasis will be placed upon the works of such composers as Mozart, Haydn, Beethoven, Schubert, Berlioz, Wagner, Verdi, Debussy, Stravinsky, Ives, and the contemporary jazz performers. This course will satisfy 3 hours of Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: MUS 100 or permission of instructor.
- 270, 270L Music Theory I (4)**  
A study of the harmonic common practice of composers during the 18th and 19th centuries. Emphasis is placed upon standard usages of harmonic content and technique, idiomatic procedures, and varied texture and styles. Laboratory work consists of exercises in ear training and sight singing. Prerequisite: MUS 104 or permission of instructor.
- 271, 271L Music Theory II (4)**  
A continuation of MUS 270, studying the harmonic common practices of composers during the 18th and 19th centuries. Emphasis is placed upon standard usages of harmonic content and technique, idiomatic procedures, and varied texture and styles. Laboratory work consists of exercises in ear training and sight singing. Prerequisite: MUS 270.
- 291 Classical Guitar Fingerings (1)**  
This course is intended for students who have previously studied classical guitar. Technical applications will include right hand studies, the use of rest stroke, scales beyond the first position, solo work on longer pieces, duets, and performance-related issues. This course may be repeated once for credit. Permission of the instructor.
- 307 Choral Conducting for the Church Musician (2)**  
A continuation of fundamental conducting skills with emphasis on refinement of standard beat patterns, irregular beat patterns, interpretation and gestural skills, and rehearsal techniques. Standard youth and adult anthem literature will be used. Prerequisites: MUS 207 and MUS 270, 271. Corequisite: MUS 161



- 315 Church Music Seminar II (1)**  
An introduction to methods, techniques, organizational strategies, and materials used in working with children's choirs.
- 365 Classical Guitar Ensemble (1)**  
Introduction to guitar ensemble. This course will focus on the dynamics of group ensemble playing, understanding tempo in a group situation, playing without a conductor, learning recovery techniques and making best use of individual practice time. May be repeated once for credit. Permission of instructor. Prerequisite or corequisite: MUS291.
- 370, 371 Music Theory III, IV (3,3)**  
A study of advanced part writing techniques, form and analysis, and compositional devices and techniques of the 18th, 19th, and 20th centuries. Prerequisites: MUS 270, 271.
- 380 Church Music (Same as REL 380) (3)**  
A study of the relationship of music to worship in the history of the Western Church. By examination of influences that have shaped the musical practices of various denominations, both liturgical and nonliturgical worship are discussed in addition to the multi-faceted purposes of music as religious expression in contemporary society. Alternate years.
- 407 Advanced Choral Conducting for the Church Musician (2)**  
Rehearsal procedure, score analysis, choral literature review, working with instrumentalists, and leadership practices for the advanced conductor will be emphasized. Literature review will include major choral works. This course will meet 3 hours per week. Prerequisite: MUS 307. Corequisite: MUS 161
- 420 Hymnody and Liturgy (3)**  
A study of the Christian hymn and canticles from the earliest Old Testament references to the present and their historical-religious background. Emphasis is also given to the origins of liturgy as well as to various liturgical and non-liturgical practices.
- 461, 462 Internship I, II (1,1)**  
Practical experience working in a church setting under the guidance of music faculty members and a church supervisor. Students will work closely with a church supervisor in matters of church music administration, and they will participate actively in the execution of church-related duties as directed by the supervisor. A weekly seminar will include critical analysis and discussion of problems.
- 480 Senior Recital (1)**  
The performance of a solo recital on the major instrument which shall be at least one-half hour in length. Required of all performance music majors.

---

---

# PHILOSOPHY (PHL)

---

---

Dr. John C. H. Laughlin  
Dr. William L. Trimyer

While Averett does not offer a major in philosophy, students have ample opportunity to be exposed to the discipline. In addition to a general introduction to the subject (which may count toward satisfying the General Education requirements), a course in Ethics is usually offered twice a year, and Philosophy of Religion once every two years.

## Courses of Instruction

**150 Introduction to Philosophy (3)**

A study of the methods and nature of philosophical inquiry, the problems with which this inquiry is concerned, and various principal solutions which have been offered to these problems. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

**210 Ethics (3)**

An examination of representative theories of morality from historical and contemporary sources. An interactive course designed to encourage critical thinking about current ethical and moral issues within our society. Questions of value, good, right, and obligation are included. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.

**440 Philosophy of Religion (3)**

A study of the nature of religious experience and an analysis of religious language with particular attention to metaphysical presuppositions. Alternate years.

---

---

# PHYSICAL EDUCATION, WELLNESS AND SPORT SCIENCE (PE)

---

---

Mr. Lee Burton, Athletic Training Program Director  
Dr. Richard Ferguson  
Dr. J. Thomson Foster, *Chair*  
Ms. Barbara A. Kushubar

Either a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree may be earned in physical education in any one of five concentrations: Physical Education-Non-teaching; Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education: PK-12; Sport Management; Wellness/Sports Medicine; and Athletic Training. Transfer students must complete a minimum of 18 semester hours in the major at Averett, 9 of which must be on the 300-400 level. Physical Education majors are strongly urged to develop in-depth competency in at least one performance area or one sport.

All majors are required to take oral and written examinations based on course work in their area of concentration. These examinations will be given during the spring semester of their senior year. Unless otherwise specified, students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate. **All majors must satisfy the General Education science requirements by taking Biology 101 and either Biology 204 or 205.**

## Requirements for a Major in Physical Education-- Non-Teaching Concentration

This concentration provides preparation for careers in such settings as YMCA, Boys Club, and city recreation organizations.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education.....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity.....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology.....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology.....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning.....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	6
Physical Education Activity Courses .....	14
Electives in the department: .....	<u>9</u>
	Total 47

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education

Freshman Year:

HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
PE Recommended Elective  
PE Activity Course

Sophomore Year:

- BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology
- PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education
- PE Recommended Elective
- PE 315, Physiology of Activity
- PE 365, Sport Psychology
- PE Activity Courses (2)

Junior Year:

- PE 320, Kinesiology
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Recommended Elective
- PE Activity Courses (2)

Senior Year:

- PE 415, Motor Learning
- PE Activity Courses (2)

**Requirements for a Major in Health, Physical Education and Driver’s Education -- Teaching License (PK-12) Concentration:**

Licensure in Health, Physical Education and Driver’s Education includes all grade levels (PK-12). The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license are explained in detail on pages 115.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
PE 303, Elementary School Physical Education .....	3
PE 304, Secondary School Physical Education.....	3
PE 306, Foundations of Traffic Safety.....	3
PE 307, Principles and Methods of Driver’s Education.....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity.....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology.....	3
PE 351, Adapted Physical Education.....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning.....	3
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education.....	3
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century .....	4
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology .....	4
Physical Education Activity Courses .....	14
(Courses must be selected from individual, dual, and team sports.)	
	Total 62

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Health, Physical Education and Driver's Education with a Teaching License (PK-12)**

### Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems  
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology  
TH 103, Introduction to Human Communications  
PE Activity Course

### Sophomore Year:

ED 290, Foundations of Education  
PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology  
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
HTH 220, Health and Fitness for the 21st Century  
HIS 201 or 202, United States History I or United States History II  
PSY 205, Developmental Psychology  
PE Activity Courses (2)

### Junior Year:

PE 306, Foundations of Traffic Safety  
PE 307, Principles and Methods of Driver's Education  
PE 320, Kinesiology  
PE 351, Adapted Physical Education  
PE 415, Motor Learning  
PE Activity Courses (2)  
PHL 150 or 210, Introduction to Philosophy or Ethics  
ED 322, Educational Psychology  
ED 334, Content Reading and Language Development  
ED 378 and 379, Elementary PK-6 Curriculum and  
Teaching Assistant: Elementary PK-6 Education  
ED 474, Secondary/PK-12 Curriculum  
ED 478, Teaching Assistant: Secondary/PK-12 Education

### Senior Year:

PE 303, Elementary School Physical Education  
PE 304, Secondary School Physical Education  
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education  
and Sports  
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education  
PE Activity Courses (2)  
ED 406, Instruction in Secondary/PK-12 Education  
ED 489, Directed Teaching in Secondary/PK-12 Education

## **Requirements for a Major in Physical Education:**

### **Sport Management Concentration**

Averett University offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Physical Education: Sports Management. This major is designed for those students interested in management positions in businesses such as collegiate or professional athletics, sporting goods sales, fitness and conditioning centers both in the private and corporate sectors, and facility management. In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BSA206, Business Communication .....	3
BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I.....	3
BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II.....	3
BSA 305, Principles of Management .....	3
BSA 310, Principles of Marketing .....	3
BSA 352, Sales Management.....	3
CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software.....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education.....	3
PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management .....	3
PE 365, Sport Psychology.....	3
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 432, Sport Law .....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	6
Physical Education Activity Courses (4 different courses).....	8
TH 103, Intro to Human Communication <b>OR</b> TH 300, Public Speaking .....	<u>3</u>
	Total 56

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education:**

### **Sport Management**

#### Freshman Year:

BSA 221, Principles of Accounting I  
 CSS 113, Microcomputers and Application Software  
 PE Activity Course  
 BIO 101, Introduction to Biology

#### Sophomore Year:

BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology  
 BSA 222, Principles of Accounting II  
 HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
 PE 203, Introduction to Physical Education  
 PE Activity Course  
 BSA206, Business Communication

#### Junior Year:

BSA 305, Principles of Management  
 BSA 310, Principles of Marketing  
 BSA 352, Sales Management  
 PE 207, Introduction to Sport Management  
 TH 103, Intro to Human Communication or TH 300, Public Speaking  
 PE Activity Course

#### Senior Year:

PE 365, Sport Psychology  
 PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education  
 and Sports  
 PE 432, Sport Law  
 PE 466, Internship  
 PE Activity Course

## Requirements for a Major in Physical Education:

### Wellness/Sports Medicine Concentration:

This major is designed for those students who are interested in pursuing careers in hospital wellness, private health clubs, corporate fitness, and physical therapy. Averett cannot provide certification in physical therapy, but we can provide the prerequisite courses required for admission to schools that do offer such certification.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance.....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology.....	3
PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology .....	3
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise .....	3
PE 360, Sports Medicine I.....	3
PE 360L, Sports Medicine I Lab .....	1
PE 365, Sports Psychology .....	3
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports.....	3
PE 421, Sports Medicine II .....	3
PE 421L, Sports Medicine II Lab.....	1
PE 425, Biomechanics .....	3
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing.....	3
PE 466, Internship.....	6
Physical Education Activity Hours .....	<u>4</u>
	Total 54

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education:

### Wellness/Sports Medicine

#### Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems  
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology

#### Sophomore Year:

BIO 204 or 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology  
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance  
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses  
PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
PE Activity Course

#### Junior Year:

PE 320, Kinesiology  
PE 355, Health Aspects of Gerontology  
PE 360 and 360L, Sports Medicine I  
PE 365, Sport Psychology  
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise  
PE 416, Issues in the Administration of Physical Education  
and Sports

Senior Year:

- PE 421 and 421L Sports Medicine II
- PE 425, Biomechanics
- PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing
- PE 466, Internship
- PE Activity Course

**Requirements for a Major in Physical Education:**

**Athletic Training Program**

Averett University’s athletic training curriculum is designed to prepare students for careers in athletic training. This curriculum stresses strong liberal arts and science foundation with clinical and problem solving development. The program requires a pre-professional phase where students will be introduced into the clinical experiences that will be required in the curriculum. The Averett University athletic training curriculum emphasizes clinical instruction which utilizes different clinical sites on and off campus including the Averett University athletic training room, sports medicine/physical therapy clinics and medical doctors’ offices. These settings will expose the student athletic trainer to different health professionals including certified athletic trainers, physical therapists, exercise physiologists, physical therapy assistants, and medical doctors. These diverse locations allow students to gain valuable experiences in a variety of athletic training settings. The program is accredited by the Commission on Accreditation of Athletic Training Education (CAATE).

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
BIO 101*, Introduction to Biology .....	4
BIO 204*, Human Anatomy and Physiology I .....	4
BIO 205*, Human Anatomy and Physiology II .....	4
HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems .....	3
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety .....	3
HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance.....	3
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training .....	3
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 320, Kinesiology or PE 425, Biomechanics.....	3
PE 360, Sports Medicine I.....	3
PE 360L, Sports Medicine I Lab .....	1
PE 365, Sport Psychology .....	3
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise .....	3
PE 409, Advanced Athletic Training .....	2
PE 421, Sports Medicine II .....	3
PE 421L, Sports Medicine II Lab.....	1
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing.....	3
PE 435, Therapeutic Modalities .....	3
PE 438, Administration of Athletic Training Programs .....	3
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education .....	3
PE 448, Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries.....	1
PE 449, Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology .....	1
PE 450, Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies .....	1
PE 451, Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training .....	1
PE 452, Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training .....	1
Total	66

\*These courses satisfy general education science requirements.

A minimum Grade Point Average of 2.50 is required in the Athletic Training Program.

Students must also complete a minimum of 800 clinical hours once accepted into the athletic training program. These clinical hours must be obtained under the supervision of an Approved Clinical Instructor, Clinical Supervisor, or allied health professional who is approved by the program director.



## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Physical Education:

### Athletic Training

#### Freshman Year:

HTH 110, Contemporary Health Problems  
HTH 200, First Aid and Safety  
BIO 101, Introduction to Biology\*  
PE 209, Introduction to Athletic Training

#### Sophomore Year:

BIO 204, Human Anatomy and Physiology I  
BIO 205, Human Anatomy and Physiology II  
PE 280, Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses  
PE 315, Physiology of Activity  
PE 435, Therapeutic Modalities  
PE 448, Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries

#### Junior Year:

HTH 320, Nutrition and Sports Performance  
PE 320 or PE 425, Kinesiology or Biomechanics  
PE 360 and 360L, Sports Medicine I and Lab  
PE 365, Sports Psychology  
PE 370, Therapeutic Exercise  
PE 421 and 421L, Sports Medicine II and Lab  
PE 449, Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology  
PE 450, Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies

#### Senior Year:

PE 409, Advanced Athletic Training  
PE 428, Graded Exercise Testing  
PE 438, Administration of Athletic Training Programs  
PE 444, Research Methods in Physical Education  
PE 451, Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training  
PE 452, Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training

### Admission to Program

The athletic training education program is a very competitive and selective major. Students wishing to major in athletic training must meet **all** of the admission standards prior to being interviewed by the selection committee. The students will be selected into the program based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available, their academic achievements, and performances on their essay and interview. The application to be accepted into the athletic training curriculum at Averett University will be submitted in the fall semester of a **prospective student's sophomore school year**. There is a pre-professional phase in which students must meet certain requirements (listed below) in order to be allowed into the Averett University Athletic Training Program. Students should contact the Program Director to get details regarding this application process.

Transfer students must meet the same requirements for acceptance. The course work must be equivalent to the Averett University curriculum and must meet all transfer acceptance requirements as set forth by the Averett University Registrar's office. The observation hours should be attained under a certified athletic trainer. These students will be considered on an individual basis with special circumstances given proper evaluation.

The student must complete the course work listed below in addition to:

Read and sign technical standards of acceptance, submit a written application and attach resume  
Complete at least 80 hours of observation under Clinical Supervisor  
Complete Averett University student observation skill sheet  
Have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher and a GPA of 3.0 or higher in the courses listed below  
Submit essay to Program Director  
Hold and maintain current First Aid/ CPR certifications  
Complete Physical Examination  
Complete the Hepatitis B Immunization or signing a declination form  
Complete Observation Skill Sheet  
Have Clinical Supervisor complete Student Evaluation

\*The Program Director must receive all materials no later than November 1<sup>st</sup> or the previous weekday if November 1<sup>st</sup> falls on the weekend or a holiday.

These courses must be completed prior to admission to the student athletic training program. The student must earn a grade of B or better in each of these courses:

PE 209 Introduction to Athletic Training  
HTH 200 First Aid/ Safety  
HTH 110 Contemporary Health Issues

\*The students who meet the above criteria in the application process will be interviewed by the members of the athletic training selection committee. The interviews will begin approximately two weeks after November 1<sup>st</sup>. The students will then be selected based on the number of student athletic trainer positions available and their performances in their course work, interview and essay.

*Students interested in athletic training should contact the curriculum director.*

### **Technical Standards of Acceptance**

The Athletic Training Program at Averett University is a rigorous and intense program that places specific requirements and demands on the students enrolled in the program. An objective of this program is to prepare graduates to enter a variety of employment settings and to render care to a wide spectrum of individuals engaged in physical activity. The technical standards set forth by the Athletic Training Program establish the essential qualities considered necessary for students admitted to this program to achieve the knowledge, skills, and competencies of an entry-level athletic trainer, as well as meet the expectations of the program's accrediting agency, the Commission on Accreditation of Allied Health Education Programs (CAAHEP). The following abilities and expectations must be met by all students admitted to the Athletic Training Program. In the event a student is unable to fulfill these technical standards, with or without reasonable accommodation, the student will not be admitted to the program.

Compliance with the program's technical standards does not guarantee a student's eligibility for the NATABOC certification exam.

Candidates for selection to the Athletic Training Program must demonstrate:

1. the mental capacity to assimilate, analyze, synthesize, and integrate concepts and problem solve to formulate assessment and therapeutic judgments and to be able to distinguish deviations from the norm;
2. sufficient postural and neuromuscular control, sensory function, and coordination to perform appropriate physical examinations using accepted techniques; and accurately, safely and efficiently use equipment and materials during the assessment and treatment of patients;

3. the ability to communicate effectively and sensitively with patients and colleagues, including individuals from different cultural and social backgrounds; this includes, but is not limited to, the ability to establish rapport with patients and communicate judgments and treatment information effectively. Students must be able to understand and speak the English language at a level consistent with competent professional practice;
4. the ability to record the physical examination results and a treatment plan clearly and accurately;
5. the capacity to maintain composure and continue to function well during periods of high stress;
6. the perseverance, diligence and commitment to complete the athletic training education program as outlined and sequenced;
7. flexibility and the ability to adjust to changing situations and uncertainty in clinical situations;
8. affective skills and appropriate demeanor and rapport that relate to professional education and quality patient care.

Candidates for selection to the athletic training program will be required to verify that they understand and meet these technical standards or that they believe that, with certain accommodations, they can meet the standards.

The Athletic Training Technical Standards Committee will evaluate a student who states he/she could meet the program's technical standards with accommodation and confirm that the stated condition qualifies as a disability under applicable laws.

If a student states he/she can meet the technical standards with accommodation, then the University will determine whether it agrees that the student can meet the technical standards with reasonable accommodation; this includes a review of whether the accommodations requested are reasonable, taking into account whether accommodations would jeopardize clinician/patient safety, or the educational process of the student or the institution, including all coursework, clinical experiences and internships deemed essential to graduation.

### **Minor in Physical Education**

Students electing a minor in physical education must complete 18 semester hours in Physical Education and/or Health. At least 9 of those hours must be at the 300-400 level. Neither activity courses nor PE 254, Life Guarding, may be included in the hours required for the minor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

### **Minor in Coaching**

The following courses are required for a minor in coaching:

	Semester Hours
PE 302, Coaching and Officiating .....	3
PE 315, Physiology of Activity .....	3
PE 365, Sports Psychology .....	3
PE 415, Motor Learning .....	3
Electives .....	6

Electives must be exclusive of activity courses or practicum experiences. If courses have prerequisites, the prerequisites must be satisfied, or permission obtained from the instructor.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

### Activity Courses

Activity courses may be repeated for a maximum of 4 semester hours credit unless otherwise indicated. Physical Education majors must fulfill activity course requirements by taking different activities. Extra fees are charged for some activities. Courses which normally require such fees are indicated by an asterisk (\*) following the course name.

Students may take a maximum of two activity courses in any semester.

101, Swimming for Non-Swimmers*.....	(2)
(May not be repeated for credit.)	
102, Swimming* .....	(2)
103, Novice Riding (same as ES102).....	(2)
106, Physical Conditioning .....	(2)
107, Bowling* .....	(2)
108, Jogging .....	(2)
(May not be repeated for credit.)	
111, Archery.....	(2)
114, Tennis.....	(2)
116, Golf* .....	(2)
126, Weight Training .....	(2)
127, Marksmanship .....	(2)
128, Badminton .....	(2)
139, Yoga .....	(2)
130, Exercise Walking .....	(2)
133, Racquetball.....	(2)
134, Softball .....	(2)
135, Basketball.....	(2)
136, Volleyball.....	(2)
150, Selected Activities.....	(2)
152, Aerobics .....	(1)
(May be repeated for maximum of 3 hours.)	
153, Baseball .....	(2)

Credit for Selected Activities (150) may be repeated for 4 credits for each different activity selected. A laboratory fee is assessed for some Selected Activity courses.

### **203 Introduction to Physical Education (3)**

A study of the history of physical education, career opportunities, current issues and future challenges in physical education.

### **205 Lifetime Fitness (3)**

A course designed to provide the student with the capability to apply scientific principles to maximize one's own fitness needs and to develop ways to maintain fitness throughout one's life. Each student will develop his/her own exercise program. The course provides both cognitive and physical experience.

### **207 Introduction to Sport Management (3)**

A study of the various areas that encompass the field of sports management and career opportunities available in those areas, budgeting, communication, sport marketing, collegiate trademark licensing, personnel issues, and future direction of sport management.

- 209 Introduction to Athletic Training (3)**  
An introductory course in the care, recognition, and management of sports-related injuries. The student will examine the responsibilities of the athletic trainer, physical educator, and coach within an athletic training program. Students will gain clinical experiences related to the health care of the athlete.
- 240 Outdoor Education (3)**  
A course designed to develop an awareness of an instructional methodology in different outdoor related subjects such as compass reading, marksmanship, camping, and activities that may be used to develop trust and self-confidence.
- 254 Life Guarding (3)**  
A course designed to give a swimmer specialized knowledge and skills of water safety. Includes techniques of teaching all levels of swimming, including life-saving. Adheres to American Red Cross standards and culminates in authorization for life guarding. Prerequisite: PE 102 or permission of instructor, plus passing the Red Cross pre-test requirements. May not be repeated for credit. Laboratory fee charged.
- 280 Prevention of Athletic Injuries and Illnesses (3)**  
A study of the prevention of athletic injuries and illnesses. The student will examine methods to prevent trauma or conditions that adversely affect the health or performance of the athlete.
- 302 Coaching and Officiating (3)**  
A course designed to develop knowledge of rules and techniques of officiating. Also included will be current techniques of skill analysis, team selection, coaching psychology, and other areas essential for success in modern day coaching.
- 303 Elementary School Physical Education (3)**  
A study of the characteristic growth patterns, interests, and physical education needs of elementary school children with a corresponding emphasis on effective teaching techniques and the skill theme approach to instruction.
- 304 Secondary School Physical Education (3)**  
A study of the characteristics of secondary school students, techniques for organizing classes, preparation of lesson plans, methods of instruction with special attention given to physical fitness and the development of sports skills, methods of assessment, and techniques for coping with discipline problems which are unique to this age group.
- 306 Foundations of Traffic Safety (3)**  
A course designed for prospective teachers of driver and safety education. Emphasis upon theory and practice of multiple-car driving range, simulation, and one street laboratory programs. Responsibility of teaching beginning students proper driving techniques. First half of 6 hours state certification requirements for teaching driver education. Prerequisite: Valid operator's license.
- 307 Principles and Methodologies of Classroom and In-Car Instruction (3)**  
Concentrated study focused on the various facets of general safety education, including home, school, traffic, industrial and pedestrian safety. Second half of 6 hours state certification requirements for teaching driver education.
- 315 Physiology of Activity (3)**  
A study of the physiological effects of exercise and application of these effects to physical education.
- 320 Kinesiology (3)**  
A study of the science of human movement.

- 351 Adapted Physical Education (3)**  
A study of the role of physical educators in aiding individuals with atypical conditions to develop to their fullest potential. Includes the understanding of specific disabilities, therapeutic exercises, and developing an adapted program.
- 355 Health Aspects of Gerontology (3)**  
A study of the physiological changes which occur in the human organism during the aging process, including changes in bone ossification and growth, metabolism, nutritional needs, strength, flexibility, cardiovascular and respiratory functions. Also to include physiological and sociological problems and ways to adjust and adapt to them.
- 360 Sports Medicine I (3)**  
A study of the process of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the lower extremities of the body.
- 360L Sports Medicine I Lab (1)**  
A lab course designed to compliment classroom instruction of PE 360. the course will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the lower extremities and trunk. Students must currently be enrolled in PE 360 to be eligible for this class.
- 365 Sport Psychology (3)**  
The study of psychological assessment techniques and intervention strategies in an effort to help individuals to achieve their optimal performance in physical activities. Areas of study include such topics as: Motivation and Performance, Personality and Behavior, Social and Cultural Aspects of Sport, Aggression, Attentional Focus, Self-Confidence, Anxiety and Arousal, and Coaching Behavior/Leadership Style.
- 370 Therapeutic Exercise (3)**  
A study of exercise principles and how they apply to injury rehabilitation. Students will learn how the body reacts to injury and healing and how exercise affects the healing phase. Students will learn how and when to apply various phases of rehabilitation as well as how to apply isometric, isotonic and isokinetic exercises. Emphasis is also on immediate, short, and long-term rehabilitation goals.
- 389 Concepts of Nutrition (3)**  
A course that examines the science of nutrition while identifying nutrition principles and their application as they affects one's health and well-being. The course is designed to personalize information, calculate the student's current level of health, and lead the student to devise a plan for adopting healthy food choices and changing one's diet as needed.
- 409 Advanced Athletic Training (2)**  
A course in which senior level athletic training students will gain experience and knowledge in contemporary aspects of athletic training. These issues may include, but are not limited to, orthotic and padding fabrication, pharmacology, general medical conditions, research methodology and job search preparation. Students will begin formally preparing to take the National Athletic Trainer Association – Board of Certification's examination during this course. The course may also include site visitations to university hospitals in order to view anatomy labs, sports medicine facilities and resource centers. Prerequisite: Senior-level standing.
- 415 Motor Learning (3)**  
A course in motor learning in which the student examines ways the brain and central nervous system process information to produce human movement and the application of this knowledge to instruction.

- 416 Issues in the Administration of Physical Education and Sports (3)**  
A study of administrative policies and trends including leadership styles and application of leadership in intramural settings. Also included are pertinent legal issues as they relate to physical education and sports.
- 421 Sports Medicine II (3)**  
A study of the process of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports-related injuries as they pertain to the upper extremities of the body.
- 421L Sports Medicine II Lab (1)**  
A lab course designed to compliment classroom instruction of PE 421. The course will utilize practical and hands-on instruction of evaluation, identification and rehabilitative techniques for sports related injuries and conditions as they pertain to the upper extremities and trunk. Students must currently be enrolled in PE 421 to be eligible for this class.
- 425 Biomechanics (3)**  
A study of the mechanical principles involved in human movement, analysis of movement and application of this knowledge to physical education and sport. Emphasis is placed on preparing the physical educator to help people become more efficient in their performance of motor skills.
- 428 Graded Exercise Testing (3)**  
A study of individual physiological needs to include special populations such as those with cardiovascular disease, respiratory illness, hypertension, etc. The student, upon completion of this course, will have learned how to develop programs of exercise and life-style modification.
- 432 Sport Law (3)**  
A study of law as it relates to sport. To include the law of contracts, tort liability, negligence, and federal regulations pertaining to Title IX and persons with handicapping conditions.
- 435 Therapeutic Modalities (3)**  
A course that involves a study of therapeutic modalities in a sports medicine setting. Emphasis is on the role of therapeutic modalities in pain management, the physiologic basis for use, clinical applications, and specific techniques of application. The student will learn how modalities play a role in injury rehabilitation.
- 438 Administration of Athletic Training (3)**  
A course that includes the organizing and administering of the training room and staff. Students will learn how to write resumes, purchase supplies, prepare a budget, and budget their time. Students will discover employment opportunities and ways to market their skills.
- 444 Research Methods in Physical Education (3)**  
A course designed to introduce students to research in all the sport sciences and to afford them the opportunity to interpret refereed articles. Topics such as fitness testing and test construction will be investigated as well as research design methods, more advanced statistical analysis and survey research methods. Single subject design methods will be examined also.
- 448 Prevention and Acute Care of Athletic Injuries (1)**  
Clinical instruction includes acute care of athletic injuries and illness. Risk management and injury prevention skills will also be discussed and demonstrated in a clinical setting. The students will learn hands-on techniques for equipment fitting and other athletic related testing.

- 449 Therapeutic Modalities and Pharmacology (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic modalities and pharmacology in an athletic training room/sports medicine setting. The emphasis will be placed on how modalities are used to control pain, inflammation and muscle firing in the rehabilitation process. Proper athlete/patient set-up and equipment utilization will be taught and evaluated. Proper education to the sports medicine population in the use and dispensing of pharmacological agents. Practical application will be the emphasis during this practicum experience.
- 450 Assessment and Evaluation of Athletic Injuries and Pathologies (1)**  
This course addresses a wide range of evaluation and assessment techniques used in athletic training. Topics covered will range from general medical conditions to athletic-related injuries. Emphasis will be placed on obtaining a complete history and hands-on use of evaluation skills learned.
- 451 Therapeutic Exercise for Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction on the use of therapeutic exercise principles and how they are applied in the rehabilitative setting. Exercise progressions will be discussed and demonstrated as well as the physiological effects of exercise. The student will learn hands-on techniques as well as proper utilization of various rehabilitative equipment. The student will be exposed to practical situations involving different rehabilitation protocols.
- 452 Administration/Psychosocial/Nutrition Issues in Athletic Training (1)**  
Clinical instruction in administrative, psychosocial and nutritional issues in the athletic and clinical setting. This practicum setting will emphasize instruction, real life situation analysis of administration, nutrition and psychosocial athletic training and sports medicine issues. The students will be exposed to real life clinical scenarios where they must utilize and develop problem solving and clinical skills in order to make the proper recommendations to the athlete and clinical subject.
- 466 Internship (6)**  
An opportunity for majors to gain practical experience in wellness/sports medicine, sport management, or recreation settings. These settings will include, but not be limited to, athletic training, hospital wellness, cardiac rehabilitation, health clubs, corporate fitness, professional athletics and city recreation departments. Students will work under the guidance of trained professionals. The internship will consist of 240 clock hours and may be taken at any time following the completion of the junior year. The course is graded on a Pass/Fail basis. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average.





---



---

# POLITICAL SCIENCE (POS)

---



---

Dr. Steven D. Wray  
 Dr. Darcy Wudel, *Coordinator*

The Political Science major provides students with a broad education in politics and government. Students who graduate from the Political Science program will become familiar with American government, with other forms of government, and with the interactions among governments. Students will gain an appreciation of ancient and modern political thought, as well as American political thought. Political Science students will, while undertaking the program, acquire the speaking, writing, and other skills fundamental to work in various occupations connected with politics. The Political Science major thus aims to prepare students to work in government (local, state, or federal), in the nonprofit sector, and in business. It is also sound preparation for post-graduate study in law and public administration.

Courses in Political Science are applicable towards a teaching license in History/Social Science. (See page 145 in this catalog). Besides teacher licensure, these courses may be used to support other areas of study.

In order to graduate, all Political Science majors must sit for an exit interview and must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major.

## Requirements for a Major in Political Science:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
POS 131, The World of Politics .....	3
POS 215, American National Government .....	3
POS 216, State and Local Government .....	1
POS 311, Comparative Government .....	3
POS 343, Ancient Political Thought .....	3
POS 344, Modern Political Thought .....	3
POS 380, International Relations .....	3
Choose one of the following courses: .....	3
POS/BIO/ENS 342, Environmental Policy and Law	
JR 330, Media Law and Ethics	
POS/CRJ 411, Constitutional Law	
Choose one of the following courses: .....	3
POS 445, Internship	
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory, & Leadership	
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics	
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology	
Choose one of the following courses: .....	3
POS/HIS 455, Political Development	
HIS 406, Twentieth Century Europe, Post-War Divisions and Unions	
HIS 410, Twentieth Century U.S. History	
POS/HIS 414, Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898	
Political Science electives .....	<u>6</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>34</b>

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Political Science

### Freshman Year:

POS 131, The World of Politics **and/or**  
POS 215, American National Government  
POS 216, State and Local Government

### Sophomore Year:

POS 311, Comparative Government  
POS 380, International Relations  
Political science elective

### Junior Year:

POS 343, Ancient Political Thought  
POS 344, Modern Political Thought  
POS/BIO/ENS 342, Environmental Policy and Law **OR**  
JR 330, Media Law and Ethics **OR**  
POS/CRJ 411, Constitutional Law

### Senior Year:

POS 445, Internship **OR**  
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics **OR**  
BSA 326, Organizational Behavior, Theory, and Leadership **OR**  
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology  
HIS/POS 455, Political Development **OR**  
HIS 406, Twentieth Century Europe, Post-War Divisions and Unions **OR**  
HIS 410, Twentieth Century U.S. History **OR**  
HIS/POS 414, Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898  
Political Science elective

## Minor

A minor in Political Science is available to the student who completes 18 semester hours of course work in Political Science, 9 of which must be at the 300-400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Courses of Instruction

### **131 The World of Politics (3)**

An introduction to various forms of regime and the political, economic and geographic information and concepts requisite to understanding them. Emphasis is placed on developing skill in retrieving and utilizing political, economic and geographic information.

### **215 American National Government (3)**

A survey of the national level of American government with particular emphasis on its founding and the development of its institutions.

### **216 State and Local Government (1)**

A survey of the essential institutions of state and local governments in the United States.

- 220 American Government: Issues and Problems (3)**  
An examination of contemporary American issues and problems in light of classic texts concerning democracy.
- 311 Comparative Government (3)**  
A comparative study of national governments in the modern world, focusing on their distinctive forms in relation to their social, economic and ideological backgrounds.
- 313 Public Administration (3)**  
A study of the concepts and practices of public administration in the United States. Primary topics of study include the role of politics in public administration; structure of public organizations; public personnel administration; budgeting and finance; and policy analysis, implementation, and evaluation techniques.
- 325 Perspectives on Leadership (3)**  
A consideration of the nature of leadership using various sources including social science, biography, history, philosophy, literature, and film.
- 342 Environmental Policy and Law (3)**  
**(Same as BIO 342 and ENS 342)**  
A survey of environmental laws and regulations in the United States: who makes the laws and why, and who enforces the laws and how. Consideration will be given to the experience of other countries and to alternate paradigms of environmental protection.
- 343 Ancient Political Thought (3)**  
An examination of writings of ancient thinkers—Plato, Aristotle, and others. Emphasis is placed on close reading and interpretation of primary texts.
- 344 Modern Political Thought (3)**  
An examination of the writings of modern thinkers—Machiavelli, Hobbes, Locke, Rousseau, and others. Emphasis is placed on close reading and interpretation of primary texts.
- 360 Public Policy (3)**  
An examination of the formulation and implementation of public policy in the United States. Emphasis will be placed on the analysis and evaluation of policy alternatives. Some consideration will be given to public policy in other nations.
- 380 International Relations (3)**  
A study of diplomacy, alliance systems, war, interdependence, and nationalism in the international arena. Special attention will be given to the causes of international conflict.
- 411 Constitutional Law (3)**  
An examination of the Constitution and the U.S. Supreme Court. The student learns how to read and analyze constitutional cases in the areas of civil rights and civil liberties, free speech, freedom of the press, freedom of religion, the right of privacy, race and sex discrimination, and the conflict of congressional and presidential powers. Alternate years.
- 414 Diplomatic History of the United States Since 1898 (3)**  
**(Same as HIS 414)**  
A study of the role of the United States in world affairs from the acquisition of empire to the present, with emphasis on the analysis of conflicting interpretations. Alternate years.

**445 Internship**

**(3)**

An opportunity for students to refine their understanding of politics through work experience. Prerequisites: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of instructor.

**455 Political Development (Same as HIS 455)**

**(3)**

A study of the development of democracy in selected countries. Attention is given to the relationships between economic and social modernization and political change. Particular emphasis is placed on the experience of Africa, Asia, and Latin America. Prerequisite: junior or senior standing in history or political science, or permission of the instructor.

---

---

**PRE-LAW (SEE ENGLISH/HISTORY)**

---

---

---

---

# PSYCHOLOGY (PSY)

---

---

Dr. Robert M. Carlsen  
Dr. Anna D. Hatten, *Chair*  
Dr. Jean L. Hatten  
Dr. David I. Rosenberg

Psychology is the scientific study of the behavior of individuals. As a science, psychology works to discover the causes of behavior and to determine how and why individuals act the way they do. People who become psychologists apply the findings of scientific psychology to improve human welfare in schools, in clinical settings, and/or in the workplace. Psychologists are uniquely suited to address societal issues by finding ways of addressing human problems, by developing knowledge and technology, and by educating people to be productive citizens and effective professionals.

The Department of Psychology at Averett University provides students with an understanding of psychology that enables them to meet the challenges of their personal and professional lives. We develop students who are professionally competent, sensitive to cultural and individual differences, ethical, self-directed, and prepared to pursue their career goals. In addition to learning the facts and theories of psychology, our students contribute to the field through participation in professional activities, both in research and in the application of psychological findings to promote human welfare in the community.

The psychology curriculum develops students who are able to think critically and analytically about problems, to apply knowledge to implement solutions, and to utilize the technical skills essential to success in contemporary society. Graduates of our program are prepared for graduate education in psychology or related fields and for careers in community agencies or in any profession where an understanding of human behavior is an asset.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Psychology:

The Psychology Department offers a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree to the student who completes the following courses in addition to the general education requirements:

	Semester Hours
Introductory level course (3-4 hours)	
PSY 110, Psychology as a Social Science .....	3
or PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science.....	4
Survey courses (12 hours)	
PSY 200, Effective Behavior .....	3
PSY 323, Learning .....	3
Two additional courses chosen from outside of the student's chosen area of concentration.....	6
Methods courses (13 hours)	
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
PSY 288, Computing in Psychology .....	2
PSY 333, Research Practicum I .....	2
PSY 334, Research Practicum II .....	3
PSY 338, Research Design.....	3
Integrated senior year experience (6 - 9 hours)	
PSY 445, History and Systems .....	3
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology .....	3
PSY 465, Senior Research (optional).....	3

**Areas of concentration (12 hours)**

Students must complete four courses selected from at least one of the following areas of concentration:

Psychology: Biological Psychology

PSY 205, Developmental Psychology.....3

PSY 315, Physiological Psychology .....3

PSY 387, Sensation and Perception .....3

PSY 395, Animal Behavior .....3

Psychology: Counseling and Clinical

PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology.....3

PSY 309, Personality Theory .....3

PSY 325, Helping Relations.....3

PSY 466, Psychological Measurements .....3

Psychology: Cognitive Science

PSY 232, Designing User-centered Web Sites.....3

PSY 332, Evaluating Web Site Usability .....3

PSY 373, Memory and Cognition .....3

PSY 387, Sensation and Perception .....3

Psychology: Industrial/Organizational

POS 325, Perspectives on Leadership.....3

PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology .....3

BSA 445, Seminar in Managerial Skills Development .....3

PSY 466, Psychological Measurements .....3

Total 45-49

**Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

**Psychology: Biological Psychology**

Freshman Year:

- PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)
- and/or
- PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)
- PSY Elective (200 level)

Sophomore Year:

- MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)
- PSY 200, Effective Behavior (spring)
- PSY 205, Developmental Psychology (fall, spring, and summer)

Junior Year:

- PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)
- PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)
- PSY 338, Research Design (fall)
- PSY 323, Learning (fall)
- PSY 315, Physiological Psychology
- PSY 333, Research Practicum I
- PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)
- PSY 373, Memory and Cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)  
PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)  
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception PSY 395, Animal Behavior  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)

### **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

#### **Psychology: Counseling and Clinical**

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)  
and/or  
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)  
PSY Elective (200 level or above)

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior      PSY Elective

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)  
PSY 323, Learning (fall)  
PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)  
PSY 338, Research Design (fall)  
PSY 325, Helping Relations (fall)  
PSY 305, Abnormal Psychology (fall)  
PSY 309, Personality Theory (spring)  
PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)  
PSY 373, Memory and Cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 425, Field Education in Psychology  
PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)  
PSY 465, Senior Research (fall)  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)  
PSY 466, Psychological Measurements (spring)

### **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

#### **Psychology: Cognitive Science**

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)  
and/or  
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)  
PSY Elective (200 level or above)  
PSY 232, Designing User-centered Web Sites (fall)

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior



Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)  
PSY 323, Learning (fall)  
PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)  
PSY 338, Research Design (fall)  
PSY 373, Memory and Cognition  
PSY 332, Evaluating Web Site Usability (spring)  
PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)  
PSY Elective (300-400 level)

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)  
PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)  
PSY 387, Sensation and Perception

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence:**

### **Psychology: Industrial/Organizational**

Freshman Year:

PSY 110 Psychology as a Social Science (fall and spring)  
and/or  
PSY 120, Psychology as a Natural Science (fall and spring)  
PSY Elective (200 level or above)

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics (fall and spring)  
PSY 200, Effective Behavior  
PSY Elective

Junior Year:

PSY 288, Computing in Psychology (fall)  
PSY 323, Learning (fall)  
PSY 333, Research Practicum I (fall)  
PSY 338, Research Design (fall)  
PSY 334, Research Practicum II (spring)  
PSY 466, Psychological Measurements  
PSY 375, Memory and cognition

Senior Year:

PSY 445, History and Systems (fall)  
PSY 465, Senior Research (enroll in fall only)  
PSY 466, Psychological Measurements  
PSY 446, Senior Seminar in Psychology (spring)  
PSY 412, Industrial/Organizational Psychology  
BSA 445, Seminar in Managerial Skills Development

## **Human-Computer Interaction Program**

Averett University offers a HCI program for students choosing as their primary major either art, computer science, computer information systems, or psychology. The program is administered by the department of psychology in consultation with an advisory committee composed of faculty members drawn from each of the contributing departments. The program is described on pages 153.

## Minor

The student who elects a minor in Psychology must complete 18 semester hours of psychology courses, including at least 9 semester hours at the 300 level or above.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Course Descriptions

### **110 Psychology as a Social Science (3)**

A survey of major problem areas in psychology emphasizing the application of psychological principles to the improvement of the human situation. Students are encouraged to analyze human problems and everyday behavior to discover how psychology can explain and improve these situations. This course may be used to satisfy 3 semester hours of the Social Sciences portion of General Education requirements.

### **120 Psychology as a Natural Science (4)**

A survey of major problem areas in psychology emphasizing the scientific process involved in gaining new knowledge. Students study the classic experiments in psychology and participate in the research process by conducting weekly laboratory exercises. The data generated by these exercises then serve as the basis for exploring naturalistic explanations of the behavior. This course may be used to satisfy 4 semester hours of the Natural Sciences portion of General Education requirements.

### **200 Effective Behavior (3)**

An applied course with a central focus on the area of personal adjustment. Working from the assumption that individuals encounter a variety of problems in life, and must work effectively with others, the course examines issues of personality and social adjustment, stress and coping, interpersonal relationships, and behavior in groups.

### **205 Developmental Psychology (3)**

A survey of the theories and research pertaining to human development across the life-span. Special attention is given to the changes in cognitive and social behavior during development and to factors responsible for these changes.

### **210 Human Sexuality (3)**

A course utilizing reports, discussion, and lectures to explore the biological, social, and personal aspects of human sexual identity and behavior.

### **219 Social Psychology (3)**

An examination of the ways in which behavior, feelings, and thoughts are affected by others through their physical presence and interaction with us, through the media, or through the environmental changes they make. Students study various theories of social behavior, learn about classic experiments in social psychology and their interpretations, and apply the discoveries in social psychology to human problems.

### **232 Designing User-centered Web Sites (3)**

This course introduces the area of human factors known as human-computer interaction design. The course uses a modification of the case method in which successful computer environments are explored by the student in hands-on exercises, and features of the environments are used to illustrate underlying psychological principles. Primary emphasis is placed on the design of effective web sites. Students critique web sites and other user environments and use principles from the diverse areas of design, sensation and perception, cognitive science, cognitive development, and ergonomics to recommend improvements. Neither programming or previous experience with computers nor a background in psychology is assumed, but a general familiarity with computers and their typical uses would be beneficial.

- 288 Computing in Psychology (2)**  
A practical introduction to computer use in the field of psychology. Students learn computer applications for collecting, filing, retrieving, calculating and graphing data. Corequisite: PSY 333.
- 305 Abnormal Psychology (3)**  
A study of the concepts of normal and abnormal behavior. Emphasis is on the causes and patterns of expression of maladaptive behavior throughout the life span, as well as the problems in assessment and intervention.
- 309 Personality Theory (3)**  
A comparative survey of the major theories of personality with emphasis on different theorists' models for understanding and predicting human behavior.
- 315 Physiological Psychology (3)**  
A study of the physiological events that underlie behavior. Students learn the physiology of individual cells in the nervous system, neurotransmitters, the general structure of the nervous system, and brain structures and physiological processes underlying psychologically important behaviors.
- 323 Learning (3)**  
An introduction to the principles of learning fundamental to the analysis and interpretation of human conduct in the clinic, the classroom, the workplace, and social situations. The course acquaints students with the structure of behavioral science and serves as a tool for lifetime analysis of human behavior.
- 325 Helping Relations (3)**  
An experience which provides the foundation for understanding the helping process. Students develop an understanding of the nature of the helping/therapeutic relationship and develop and practice basic interpersonal communication skills that are the core of the helping process. Prerequisite: PSY 200 and permission of instructor
- 332 Evaluating Web Site Usability (3)**  
A study of techniques available for evaluating the relative usability of various interface designs with an emphasis on assuring effective web-site design. Traditional experimental methods are covered and compared with discount usability testing methods and other methods such as usability inspection (heuristic evaluation, cognitive walkthroughs, surveys, focus groups, and field testing.) Wherever possible, the course provides hands-on testing opportunities as the best way to learn and compare the effectiveness of these methodologies.
- 333 Research Practicum I (2)**  
Fundamental skills required for the ethical conduct of research are introduced. Students develop competence through direct experience to accurately observe behavior and develop detailed narratives of their observations, to operate computer systems that automatically record data and control experimental events, to electronically store and retrieve data, to analyze findings and to graphically present the results of those analyses. Students write an APA-style research report summarizing their findings and conclusions. Finally, students develop a proposal for original, presentation-quality research to be conducted in a subsequent semester. Co-requisite: PSY 288 and 338.
- 334 Research Practicum II (3)**  
A practicum in which students conduct a literature review, design and conduct original research either in a laboratory or community setting, and present their findings in an APA-style report and in a poster session open to the college community. Pre-requisite: PSY 333 and permission of the instructor

- 338 Research Design (3)**  
A study of the methods of research in psychology. Students learn typical research designs and statistical procedures encountered in psychology, gain experience in analyzing and interpreting data, and learn to prepare APA-style research reports. Learning takes place in the context of the major content areas of experimental psychology. Co-requisites: PSY 288, PSY 333. Recommended: MTH 160.
- 373 Memory and Cognition (3)**  
An examination of cognitive psychology as an approach to the study of psychology and a study of the major issues and problems considered by cognitive psychologists. Attention is given to the history and perspective of cognitive psychology, as well as to theories and data pertaining to information processing, memory and representation of knowledge, language, and problem solving. This course is strongly recommended for students planning to pursue graduate studies in psychology.
- 387 Sensation and Perception (3)**  
A study of the behavior and physiological approaches to the study of sensory systems and the perceptions they stimulate. The visual system is emphasized.
- 395 Animal Behavior (3)**  
A study of the behavior of animals emphasizing role of evolutionary processes in the development of species-typical behavior.
- 412 Industrial/Organizational Psychology (3)**  
A study of the fundamental psychological principles and methods used in industrial/organizational psychology. Topics considered include: job analysis, personnel selection and training, performance appraisal, work motivations and attitudes, and organizations and behavior.
- 425 Field Education in Psychology (3)**  
A supervised experience in a community mental health agency. Open to selected students with at least a 2.0 grade point average. Permission of instructor required.
- 445 History and Systems (3)**  
A systematic overview of the development of the discipline of psychology from its philosophical origins through contemporary laboratory-based theories. Attention is given to the major attempts at theory development in psychology. Prerequisite: PSY 323.
- 446 Senior Seminar in Psychology (3)**  
A seminar in which senior psychology students bring together their diverse perspectives about the nature of psychology for an integrating experience. Students will demonstrate their critical and analytic abilities and their command of the facts and theories of psychology through presentations of their significant works to psychology faculty and fellow students. Prerequisite: PSY 334 and 445
- 465 Senior Research (3)**  
An independent study in which the student conducts an original research project. This course is open to senior psychology majors who submit an approved research proposal to the instructor. Prerequisites: PSY 334 and permission of instructor
- 466 Psychological Measurements (3)**  
An introduction to the theories and practice of psychological test construction, interpretation, and use. This course develops skills in evaluating tests, interpreting test results, understanding test manuals. Recommended: MTH 160

---

---

# RELIGION (REL)

---

---

Dr. Jeffrey A. Fager  
Dr. John Charles Hugh Laughlin, *Chair*  
Dr. William L. Trimyer

Recognizing the individual and the particular needs of the individual, the Religion program at Averett University is designed to prepare the student for continuing seminary/graduate study or for an immediate career in Christian ministry.

The Religion program attempts to combine classroom learning with actual field experience so that the graduate is both intellectually equipped and practically trained in his/her profession. The Bachelor of Arts in Religion is the basic degree and is designed primarily for students moving toward the practice of ministry. The student may elect to complete 6 hours of Greek and 6 hours of Hebrew to satisfy the foreign language requirement for any of these majors.

## Requirements for a Major in Religion:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament Literature .....	3
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament Literature.....	3
PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy.....	3
REL 403, History of Christianity .....	3
REL 465, Senior Research Thesis.....	1
One advanced Old Testament course .....	3
One advanced New Testament course.....	3
One of the following .....	3
REL 201, Religions of the World	
REL 260, Religion in America	
REL 306, African-American Religions	
One of the following:.....	3
PHL 210, Ethics	
PHL 440, Philosophy of Religion	
Religion or Philosophy electives at 300-400 level.....	<u>9</u>
Total	34

## Exit Requirement

All Religion majors are required to enroll in REL 465, Senior Research Thesis, during their senior year. The student will write a research project which may grow out of a research paper he/she has already prepared. This project will be supervised by the appropriate professor and must receive a passing grade from an outside reader. The length of the thesis will be between 40-50 pages exclusive of bibliography.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Religion**

### Freshman Year:

REL 101, Introduction to Old Testament  
REL 102, Introduction to New Testament

### Sophomore Year:

PHL 150, Introduction to Philosophy  
REL 201, or 260, or 306, Religions of the World or  
Religion in America or  
African-American Religions

### Junior Year:

PHL 210 or PHL 440, Ethics or Philosophy of Religion  
REL 300-400 level course in New Testament  
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level

### Senior Year:

REL 300-400 level course in Old Testament  
REL 403, History of Christianity  
REL/PHL Elective, 300-400 level (2)

## **Minor**

Students electing a minor in Religion must complete the following: REL 101, 102, and 12 additional hours selected from Religion or Philosophy (9 of the 12 additional hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## **In-Service Guidance**

Each student receives professional training under a certified supervisor in an area related to the student's future vocational goals. The objectives of these in-service experiences are:

To prepare the student for leadership roles in local churches, chaplaincies, denominations, and related institutions.

To establish better lines of communication between ministers/churches and the campus so that the student will be able to identify more easily with specific forms of ministry.

To introduce the student to capable leaders within his/her denomination who satisfactorily demonstrate effective professional leadership.

To acquaint students as thoroughly as possible with organizational structures and procedures of local churches, denominational agencies and institutions.

To promote opportunities for students to evaluate their commitments and to develop their innate abilities; to develop desirable interests, attitudes, ideas, and techniques of ministry through self-direction and self-evaluation; to experience ministry and mission principles and methodology on the job under qualified supervision; to evaluate their ministry and mission experience through interaction with professors and career ministers on the campus.

All ministerial students receiving ministerial discounts at Averett University are required to take in-service guidance courses which will add 9 hours to any major offered by the Department of Religion. Those courses include REL 255, Ministry Formations and REL 453 and 454, Internship I, II.

## Courses of Instruction

- 101 Introduction to Old Testament Literature (3)**  
The application of critical methodology to the history, literature, and religion of the ancient Hebrews. Attention is given to the historical context, the development, and the message of the Hebrew faith. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.
- 102 Introduction to New Testament Literature (3)**  
The application of critical methodology to the biblical text to discover the basic meaning and message of the New Testament. Attention is given to the secular and religious history of the period as well as to the life and teachings of Jesus, the letters of Paul, and the origins of the Christian Church. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.
- 201 Religions of the World (3)**  
An examination of the origin, basic beliefs, historical developments, and sociological manifestations of the world's great religions. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Religion and Philosophy requirement for General Education.
- 212 Death and Dying (Same as SOC 212) (3)**  
The goal of this course is to examine the phenomenon of death and dying within various cultural and religious contexts with the view of understanding how such perspectives inform our understanding of the end of life. This approach will survey the principles and perspectives of science and the humanities as they apply to the experience of death and dying. Numerous studies and instructional methodologies will be examined for the purpose of correcting stereotypes and myths concerning death and the reactions of people to death and dying. The course will pay particular attention to the phenomenon of death and dying through the lenses of social science and religion.
- 260 Religion in America (3)**  
A study of the history and expression of religion in America through Protestantism, Catholicism, and Judaism. Attention will also be given to a comparison of mainstream and divergent groups and the religious expressions in America since 1950. Alternate years.
- 304 Studies in the Prophets (3)**  
The historical background, function, message, contribution, and contemporary significance of the Hebrew prophets. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 101.
- 305 Studies in the Poetry and Wisdom Literature (3)**  
The historical background, function, message, contribution, and contemporary significance of the poetry and wisdom literature of the Old Testament. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 101.
- 306 African-American Religions (3)**  
A reading/lecture/dialogue course designed to survey the development of Afro-American religion from its African roots to the present. The course will focus on the black folk tradition and denominational structures, as well as some of the significant leaders and movements within black religion in America. Special emphasis will be given to the liberation tradition within black Protestantism, Catholicism, and Islam.
- 307 Spirituality in Business and Commerce (3)**  
This course will consider the role of spiritual values and ethics in the workplace and how the application of spiritual and ethical values can contribute positively to the bottom line. The student will consider how humanizing the workplace can help restore a higher conscience and consciousness to business, as well as bringing heart into the business and commercial arenas.

**308 Introduction to Islam (3)**  
This course will present the history, basic beliefs, sacred writings, and institutional structures of Islam. In addition, this course will investigate both current events between Western and Muslim countries and struggles within Islam itself.

**311 Jesus in the Synoptic Gospels (3)**  
A study of the life and teachings of Jesus through a careful examination of the synoptic gospels in the light of available historical, cultural, and literary studies. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**312 Life and Letters of Paul (3)**  
An introductory course on the life and thought of Paul. The Pauline letters are studied within the historical context of first century Christianity, and their contemporary importance for the church in today's world is explored. Alternate years. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**313 Johannine Literature (3)**  
A study of the Gospel of John, the Epistles of John, and the Revelation. The student will master the contents of the books and the major critical issues involved in their interpretation, and will demonstrate competence in using modern research and interpretive methods. Every third year. Prerequisite: REL 102.

**315 Archaeology and the Bible (3)**  
A survey of the contributions of Near Eastern archaeology to Biblical studies.

**351 Developing Spiritual Discipline (3)**  
This course has a dual purpose of introducing learners to the rich tradition of Christian mysticism as well as to increase the learner's awareness and practice of spiritual formation. Learners will be exposed to a variety of spiritual resources that will enable them to learn and experiment with different traditions and approaches to deepening their spiritual life.

**380 Church Music (Same as MUS 380) (3)**  
A study of the relationship of music to worship in the history of the Western Church. By examination of influences that have shaped the musical practices of various denominations, both liturgical and nonliturgical worship are discussed in addition to the multifaceted purposes of music as religious expression in contemporary society. Alternate years.

**403 History of Christianity (3)**  
A study of the history of the Christian religion and Church from the first century to the beginning of the modern period. The course highlights the theological and sociological developments in the Early Church, the Middle Ages, the Reformation, and post-Reformation periods.

**465 Senior Research Thesis (1)**  
An opportunity for students to demonstrate critical skills in the area of research and writing. The projects/papers will be reviewed by an external evaluator. The course is required of all seniors and must be successfully completed prior to graduation. Prerequisite: Senior status.

#### In-Service Guidance

**255 Ministry Formations (3)**  
A seminar designed to acquaint the student with the ministry as a profession and to help the student define his/her role in relationship to the ministry as a vocation, become acquainted with the basic skills of pastoral care and develop communication skills necessary for the ministry. Required of all students who are receiving ministerial tuition grants.



**453, 454 Internship I, II**

**(3,3)**

A program designed to give senior students in-depth training as they serve as apprentices under highly trained, local supervisor-mentors for two semesters. The student is expected to write weekly experiential reports and to meet with their mentor one hour each week on one-on-one supervision of their work. Discussion about practical application will be held weekly with the supervisor, and weekly seminars will be held at the college to discuss the learning activities. The student is expected to spend 7-8 hours each week in the field, active in the apprenticeship. Required of all fourth year students who are receiving ministerial tuition grants. Prerequisite: 2.0 grade point average.

---

---

# SOCIOLOGY (SOC)

---

---

Dr. Rebecca L. Clark  
Dr. Laura L. Hartman  
Dr. Steve Wray, *Chair*

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology is a four-year program at Averett University. The curriculum in Sociology ensures that each student is provided with a strong foundation in the basic principles, techniques of analysis, and theories for understanding and working with the important aspects of social life in the contemporary world. The program gives students an appreciation of their own social world, a broader understanding of different ways of life, and a more complete perspective of the world and their place in it. Courses focus on the study of the structure and changes of social life and relationships, and on contemporary issues in areas such as the family, crime, religion, race and ethnic relations, urban communities, aging, gender roles, and law. The program prepares students for careers in government employment, secondary teaching, social services, and research with agencies in industry and business. It also enables students to work as data analysts, office managers, sales directors, labor managers, city planning directors, police officers, parks and recreation directors, community organizers, social workers, management consultants, advertising executives, and insurance agents. Supervised internships are available in community agencies and organizations to allow students to test their ideas about careers and examine the realities of a professional occupation.

Students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Sociology:

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology .....	3
SOC 401, Social Theory.....	3
SOC 440, Senior Seminar .....	3
SOC 470, Research Methods .....	3
Sociology Electives .....	15
MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics.....	3
	Total 30

## Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Sociology

Freshman Year:

SOC 101, Introduction to Sociology

Sophomore Year:

MTH 160, Introduction to Statistics

SOC Recommended Elective

SOC Recommended Elective

Junior Year:

SOC Recommended Elective

SOC 300+ Elective

Senior Year:

SOC 401, Social Theory

SOC 470, Research Methods

SOC 440, Senior Seminar

SOC 300+ Elective

## **Sociology/Criminal Justice**

The Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Science degree in Sociology/Criminal Justice is a four-year program at Averett University and requires courses in Sociology and in Criminal Justice.

Specific course requirements for the Sociology/Criminal Justice Programs (4-year program and 2+2 program) may be found in the Criminal Justice section of the catalog, [pages 106](#).

## **Minor**

Students electing a minor in Sociology must complete SOC 101 plus 15 hours in Sociology (9 hours must be at the 300-400 level).

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## **Courses of Instruction**

### **101 Introduction to Sociology (3)**

A scientific study of social behavior examining the topics of culture, socialization, social organization, social class, minority groups, social power and conflict, patterns of social interaction, the environment, and social change.

### **102 Social Problems (3)**

An examination of the contemporary social problems of poverty, war, racism, sexism, domestic violence, and resource depletion. Theories of causation, cost, and possible solutions are discussed.

### **212 Death and Dying (Same as REL 212) (3)**

The goal of this course is to examine the phenomenon of death and dying within various cultural and religious contexts with the view of understanding how such perspectives inform our understanding of the end of life. This approach will survey the principles and perspectives of science and the humanities as they apply to the experience of death and dying. Numerous studies and instructional methodologies will be examined for the purpose of correcting stereotypes and myths concerning death and the reactions of people to death and dying. The course will pay particular attention to the phenomenon of death and dying through the lenses of social science and religion.

### **216 Criminology (3)**

An examination of criminal behavior and crimes against society. The crimes surveyed include murder, burglary, robbery, fraud, embezzlement, confidence games, and business crimes. The course provides an analysis of the social and legal factors affecting the nature of crime and the development of social responses to it.

### **230 Cultural Anthropology (3)**

A comparative study of cultures around the world. Emphasis is on the variations in marriage and kinship, religion and magic, the arts, language, and social systems of politics, stratification, and economics.

### **306 Marriage and the Family (3)**

A study of courtship, marriage, and the family, focusing on the problems in these relationships and promoting self-understanding in dynamic relationships.

- 309 Society and the Individual (3)**  
An examination of the individual in a changing society and the dynamic relationship between the person and society at large. Particular attention is paid to the topics of personality development, perception, symbolic communication, drug addiction, madness, social control, and deviant subcultures. Several theoretical perspectives are employed to analyze these topics.
- 317 American Minorities (3)**  
An examination of the conditions and problems of minority groups with particular emphasis on the social and psychological processes involved in prejudice. The focus is on racial, ethnic, class, and religious minorities, but consideration is given to women, the elderly, homosexuals, and the mentally and physically disabled as minority groups. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 320 Urban Sociology (3)**  
An examination of the origin and development of the city and urbanization as a social phenomenon. The organization, functions, and problems of modern urban communities are examined with special emphasis on population growth and environmental decay. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 329 Drugs and Substance Abuse (same as CRJ 329) (3)**  
An examination of drugs and substance abuse in American society. The course examines the social, physical, and mental effects drugs have on the user, as well as the impact they have on the family and society. Major issues include addiction, recovery, treatment, rehabilitation and relapse prevention.
- 332 Gender Roles in Society (3)**  
A study of the impact of gender roles on the institutions of our society including the family, church, school, economy, military, sports, media, health care, law and government. The biological, psychological, and sociocultural explanations for the acquisition of gender roles also will be examined as well as the importance of language and the nature of same sex and opposite sex relationships.
- 340 Juvenile Delinquency and Justice (Same as CRJ 340) (3)**  
An examination of the causes of juvenile delinquency, sociological theory, and the responses of the legal system. The extent of juvenile delinquency, the organization of police, judicial, and correctional response to juvenile offenders, the legal developments in statutory and case law, and the future of this system are examined.
- 344 Sports on the Silver Screen (3)**  
Most Americans are at least somewhat interested in sport and many are downright fanatical about it. This does not mean they necessarily understand sport. Today, every facet of sport culture is media culture. By looking at sports films, this course will examine how sport is linked to other institutions in society and the role sport plays in socializing youngsters in American values. Sport movies will also be used to examine the issues of race, gender, deviance and violence.
- 365 Aging and Society (3)**  
An exploration of the characteristics, experiences, problems, and needs of older persons. Issues examined include population changes, health, physical changes, social psychological processes of aging, social policies for the aged, and community programs and services for older adults. Prerequisite: SOC 101.
- 375 Corrections (Same as CRJ 375) (3)**  
A survey of prison, jail, and correction alternatives in the United States. Topics include federal, state, and local correctional facilities, sentencing, the prison experience, community correctional programs, probation and parole. Prerequisite: SOC 216 or CRJ 301.

- 401 Social Theory (3)**  
A review of the growth and development of sociology, the major theories of symbolic interactionism, conflict, functionalism, and the fundamentals of theory construction. Prerequisites: SOC 101 and six additional hours in sociology.
- 440 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A capstone course for the major. The student will complete a project combining theory, research, and evaluation methods on a selected topic in the major. A portion of the course will be devoted to career development. Prerequisite or corequisite: SOC 470.
- 445 Internship (3)**  
A supervised work experience in a setting that requires the student to use sociological skills in a practical, applied program. A qualitative analysis and report are required. Prerequisite: 2.0 cumulative grade point average and permission of the instructor.
- 470 Research Methods (3)**  
An examination of the methods sociologists use in gathering and evaluating scientific facts. Topics include surveys, participant observation, content analysis, questionnaire construction, and interviewing. Prerequisites: SOC 101 and six hours of sociology.

---

---

# SPANISH (SPA)

---

---

Dr. Barbara A. Clark, *Chair*

The modern language program is proficiency-based; that is, students learn skills which help them to function in the language. The goal at each level is to help the student advance to the next level of proficiency.

## Placement

Students who wish to begin the study of Spanish for the first time are not required to sit for the placement exercise.

All students with two or more years of high school credit, or transfers with college credit who intend to continue their study of Spanish at Averett, must sit for the placement exercise. Students are encouraged to do as well as possible. A low score may result in the placement of the student in a lower level class for remedial purposes. No credit hours will be earned. See section on placement tests on pages 10 and 12.

Those students whose records indicate successful completion of three or more years of Spanish within the past two years should, depending upon the results of the placement exercise, expect to be placed in 201 or a higher level course.

Opportunities for study in countries where the Spanish language prevails are available, and arrangements may be made with the Spanish instructor.

## Minor

A minor in Spanish is available to students who satisfactorily complete SPA 221, 222, 315, and 316 or 317 and all prerequisite courses.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

## Liberal Studies: Teaching License Majors

Students who plan to earn a teaching license in grades PK-6 may choose a concentration in Spanish as one of two concentration areas required for licensure. This concentration consists of SPA 221 and 222 or 315 and 316 or 317, depending upon placement.

## Pass/Fail Option

Elective Spanish courses may be taken Pass/Fail if they are not used to fulfill a general education requirement. For example, students who minor in French, who seek a B.A. degree or who choose a Spanish course to fulfill the cultural component may not choose the Pass/Fail option.

## Courses of Instruction

### 101, 102 Beginning Spanish I, II

(4,4)

A course designed to help students learn functional tasks that permit them to use Spanish in appropriate, "real-life" situations. Special emphasis is placed on speaking and listening, followed by exercises to promote skill in reading and writing. This course is intended for students with fewer than two years of prior instruction in Spanish.

**201, 202 Intermediate Spanish I, II**

**(3,3)**

A review of basic grammar and intermediate functional skills. Special emphasis is placed on reading and writing followed by exercises to improve listening and speaking skills. This course is intended for students who have successfully completed two or more years of prior instruction in Spanish. Prerequisite: SPA 102 or departmental placement.

**211 Intermediate Spoken Spanish**

**(1)**

A course designed to provide additional practice in speaking for students enrolled in intermediate level courses. It is especially helpful to students new to Averett. Pass/Fail only, this course may be repeated once for credit. Prerequisite: SPA 102 or equivalent.

**221 Conversation and Listening**

**(4)**

A course intended to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level in speaking and listening proficiency. Video and audio materials, computer software, and contact with speakers outside the classroom setting enable students to improve their comprehension. Prerequisite: SPA 202 or departmental placement.

**222 Advanced Writing and Grammar**

**(3)**

A course designed to help the intermediate level student progress to an advanced level of proficiency in written Spanish. Various activities allow the student to explore stylistic elements which affect the form and tone of the written word. The grammatical structures needed to perform particular written tasks are reviewed systematically. Prerequisite: SPA 221 or departmental placement.

**315 Introduction to Literature**

**(3)**

An introduction to works representative of the great Hispanic literary tradition. Different examples of literary genres will be studied in order to provide the student with the greatest exposure. Activities and exercises are designed to develop students' awareness and appreciation of various styles and themes of literary works. Prerequisite: SPA 221 or 222, departmental placement, or permission of the department chair.

**316 Culture and Civilization, Spain**

**(3)**

A course designed for the advanced-level student who wishes to explore and to understand better the relationship of history and cultural development in Spanish society. Historical periods and topics will vary. Prerequisite or corequisite: SPA 222.

**317 Culture and Civilization, Latin America**

**(3)**

A course designed for the advanced-level student who wishes to explore and to understand better the relationship of history and cultural development in Hispanic societies. Historical periods and topics will vary. Prerequisite or Corequisite: SPA 222.

---

---

# THEATRE (TH)

---

---

Mr. Richard Breen  
Mr. Jackie Finney, *Chair*  
Ms. Penny Sornberger

The Averett University Department of Theatre has dedicated itself to the teaching of the practice of theatre, in all of its aspects, and to the growth and development of this discipline in those students who have expressed an interest in the theatre arts. Students in the department bring with them a variety of backgrounds and experiences, both acting and technical, and it becomes the goal of the department to enhance those experiences into an ensemble effort, creating a sense of teamwork and mutual interdependence.

The Theatre Department supports the University's mission of developing students who communicate clearly, think critically, have a global perspective and are lifelong learners by offering academic courses that fulfill the General Education requirements of the University. The department also recognizes, and strives to fulfill, its responsibilities as a cultural center for the University and the surrounding community by presenting a series of professionally-staged theatre productions throughout the school year.

Upon graduation each major should exhibit the skills and background necessary to enter successfully into a graduate program of study or into an entry-level professional position.

All theatre majors must complete a senior project prior to graduation. In addition, students must attain at least a 2.00 grade point average in the major in order to graduate.

## Requirements for a Major in Theatre:

In addition to the general education requirements for a Bachelor of Arts degree, the following courses are required:

	Semester Hours
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre.....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit) .....	4
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b> TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b> TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b> TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 220, History of the Theatre I.....	3
TH 221, History of the Theatre II .....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I.....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II.....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design .....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I.....	3
TH 410, Modern Drama .....	3
TH 462, Senior Seminar.....	3
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare.....	3
Theatre Electives (3 hours must be at the 300 level or above).....	6
	Total 49

All students majoring in Theatre are required to serve as Stage Manager for at least one major drama production and to serve as chairperson at least once for each production crew (e.g. makeup, lighting, costumes, deck, and house management).



## **Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: Theatre**

### **Freshman Year:**

TH, 101, 220 **or** 221, Voice and Diction **or**  
History of the Theatre I **or**  
History of the Theatre II  
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre  
TH 133 **or** Acting I **or** Acting II  
TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or** Stagecraft II  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum

### **Sophomore Year:**

TH 220 **or** 221, History of the Theatre I **or**  
History of the Theatre II  
TH 233 **or** 333, Acting II **or** Acting III  
TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or** Theatre Elective

### **Junior Year:**

TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**  
Acting IV **or** Theatre Design  
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 220 **or** 221, History of the Theatre I **or**  
History of the Theatre II  
TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**  
Play Directing II  
Theatre Elective

### **Senior Year:**

TH 410, Modern Drama  
TH 110, Theatre Practicum  
TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**  
Acting IV **or** Theatre Design  
TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**  
Play Directing II  
TH 462, Senior Seminar  
Theatre Elective

## Requirements for a Major in Theatre

### With Teaching License

Students may earn a Bachelor of Arts or a Bachelor of Science degree in Theatre with Teaching License.

	Semester Hours
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre.....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 4 hours credit).....	4
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b>	
TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b>	
TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b>	
TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher .....	3
TH 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature.....	3
TH 220, History of the Theatre I.....	3
TH 221, History of the Theatre II .....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I.....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II.....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design .....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I.....	3
TH 402, Play Directing II.....	3
TH 410, Modern Drama .....	3
TH 440, Advanced Design .....	3
TH 462, Senior Seminar.....	3
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare.....	<u>3</u>
	Total 55

The other **General Education** and **Professional Education** requirements which must be met in order to be recommended for a teaching license may be found on pages 115.

## Requirements for a Major in English/Theatre

### With or Without Teaching License

The Bachelor of Arts degree in English/Theatre is designed primarily for students who wish to be certified to teach both English and Theatre in secondary schools. Some students interested in pursuing graduate degrees in either or both fields also select the English/Theatre degree.

In addition to the general education requirements, the following courses are required: (Students seeking teaching licensure must also complete required professional education courses found on page 115.)

	Semester Hours
ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century .....	3
ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries .....	3
ENG 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature .....	3
ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English .....	3
ENG 406, The Romantic Movement in American Literature .....	3
ENG 407, American Literature: The Gilded Age to WWII .....	3
ENG 410, Modern Drama .....	3
ENG 414/TH 414, Shakespeare .....	3
ENG 421, Teaching Composition .....	3
ENG 470, Literature for Children .....	3
English Elective .....	3
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 110, Theatre Practicum (must repeat for 3 hours credit).....	3
TH 133, Acting I <b>or</b>	
TH 233, Acting II <b>or</b>	
TH 333, Acting III <b>or</b>	
TH 433, Acting IV .....	6
TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher .....	3
TH 220, History of the Theatre I <b>or</b>	
TH 221, History of the Theatre II.....	3
TH 251, Stagecraft I.....	3
TH 252, Stagecraft II.....	3
TH 340, Theatre Design .....	3
TH 401, Play Directing I.....	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>60</b>

### Sample Four-Year Course Sequence: English/Theatre

#### with Teacher Licensure

Freshman Year:

- ENG 111, Introduction to Writing and Research
- ENG 112, Introduction to Literature
- TH 101, **or** 220 **or** 221, Voice and Diction **or**  
History of the Theatre I **or**  
History of the Theatre II
- TH 105, Introduction to the Theatre
- TH 133 **or** 233, Acting I **or**  
Acting II
- TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or** Stagecraft II
- TH 110, Theatre Practicum

Sophomore Year:

- ENG 201, Major British Authors, through 18th Century
- ENG 202, Major British Authors, 19th and 20th Centuries
- English Elective
- TH 101, **or** 220 **or** 221, Voice and Diction **or**
- History of the Theatre I **or** History of the Theatre II
- TH 233 **or** 333, Acting II **or**
- Acting III
- TH 251 **or** 252, Stagecraft I **or**
- Stagecraft II
- TH 205, Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher
- TH 110, Theatre Practicum

Junior Year:

- ENG 390, Origins and Structure of English
- ENG 406, Romantic Movement in American Literature
- ENG 407, American Literature: The Gilded Age to World War II
- TH 340, Theatre Design
- ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**
- TH 410, Modern Drama
- TH 110, Theatre Practicum
- TH 401 **or** 402, Play Directing I **or**
- Play Directing II

Senior Year:

- ENG 414, Shakespeare **or**
- TH 410, Modern Drama
- ENG 421, Teaching Composition
- ENG 470, Literature for Children
- TH 333 **or** 433 **or** 340, Acting III **or**
- Acting IV **or** Theatre Design

**Minor**

Students electing a minor in Theatre must complete 18 semester hours from courses listed under Theatre, 9 of which must be at the 300 or 400 level.

Students must maintain a grade point average of at least 2.00 in the minor.

**Teacher Licensure: Speech Endorsement**

Students seeking this endorsement must have a primary license in another field to which an endorsement in Speech may be added. The requirements for an add-on endorsement in Speech are listed below:

	Semester Hours
TH 101, Voice and Diction .....	3
TH 205, Creative Dramatics.....	3
TH 210, Oral Interpretation of Literature.....	3
TH 300, Public Speaking.....	<u>3</u>
<b>Total</b>	<b>12</b>

TH 103, Introduction to Human Communication, is included in core requirements.

## **Courses of Instruction**

### **101 Voice and Diction (3)**

A course designed to improve voice and diction. A study of the physiological structure of the vocal mechanism and an introduction to phonetics is made to give the student a basis for continuing improvement in breathing, relaxation, and presentation. This course strives for a beginning understanding of "Standard American English" with vocal work on monologues, reports, and exercises. Oral projects and lectures will be a part of the course.

### **103 Introduction to Human Communication (3)**

The study of communication forms and contexts, including intrapersonal, interpersonal, and public. Emphasis on development of individual communicative competency in such areas as listening, reasoning, interviewing, small group, and nonverbal communication. Completion of ENG 111 is recommended as prerequisite.

### **105 Introduction to the Theatre (3)**

A course designed to familiarize the student with structural forms and styles of dramatic literature from the classic to the contemporary period. The development of acting techniques, theatre architecture, methods of staging, and theatre terminologies are included. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education.

### **110 Theatre Practicum (1)**

A course designed to give credit for execution of major responsibility in theatre activities under faculty supervision. May be repeated up to eight times for credit. Prerequisite: Approval of TH faculty.

### **133 Acting I (3)**

A general introductory course in acting. The course involves exercises in voice, movement, improvisation, pantomime, text study, and some scene work. Open to all students. Alternate years.

### **205 Creative Dramatics for the Classroom Teacher (3)**

A course of instruction in directing creative dramatics for children. Included are the study of psychological elements involved in group activity along with the means of stimulating growth of the imagination and the development of self-expression in children. Alternate years.

### **210 Oral Interpretation of Literature (same as ENG 210) (3)**

A course designed to introduce the student to the oral communication of various forms of literature and to instruct the student in techniques of oral delivery. Regular performance in an informal atmosphere with constructive criticism by the instructor and fellow students makes up a major part of the course.

### **220 History of the Theatre I (3)**

The study of theatre development from its beginning to the Renaissance. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: TH 105 or permission of instructor.

### **221 History of the Theatre II (3)**

The study of theatre development from the Renaissance to Ibsen. This course satisfies 3 hours of the Fine Arts requirement for General Education. Prerequisite: TH 105 or permission of instructor.

### **233 Acting II (3)**

A course that involves basic scene study, character work and text analysis. The actor's work continues with the study of various techniques used in performance. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 133 (Acting I) or permission of instructor.

- 251 Stagecraft I (3)**  
An introduction to the building and painting of scenery and to lighting mechanics.
- 251L Stagecraft I Lab (0)**  
A laboratory class to accompany TH 251, requiring approximately 45 laboratory hours per semester.
- 252 Stagecraft II (3)**  
An introduction to the building and maintenance of costumes and to the application of makeup.
- 252L Stagecraft II Lab (0)**  
A laboratory class to accompany TH 252, requiring approximately 45 laboratory hours per semester.
- 300 Public Speaking (3)**  
A course designed to build self-confidence in the student and to acquaint the student with the structural elements of various forms of public discourse working toward logical, coherent and easy communication.
- 320 Church Drama (3)**  
A study of all aspects of theatrical productions to be produced in churches, including the process of analysis and interpretation, directing, designing of scenery, costuming and makeup.
- 333 Acting III (3)**  
An advanced acting class focusing on how an actor approaches Period styles and movement. Intensive scene study and monologues from the Greek Classics to Modern Drama. Prerequisite: TH 233 or permission of instructor.
- 340 Theatre Design (3)**  
A course tailored to the individual needs of beginning design students; the focus will be on either scenery, costumes, lighting, or sound design. May be repeated for a maximum of 9 semester hours.
- 342 Stage Management (3)**  
An introductory course involving the fundamental principles of stage management. This course is a practical guide to all phases of production management, stage management, and front-of-the-house operations. The course includes techniques and devices for effective backstage operations, and covers all aspects of stage management from pre-production through the final performance.
- 401 Play Directing I (3)**  
An introduction to creative and aesthetic challenges faced by the director and how they are solved. Included is an examination of the director's relationship to the text, design team and the actor. This approach is both theatrical and practical involving reasoning, analysis, research, rehearsal observation, exercises and papers. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 333 or permission of instructor.
- 402 Play Directing II (3)**  
An advanced study of the method of analysis, interpretation, and blocking of a play. This is the practical application of directorial methods learned. Extensive research including script analysis and interpretation, establishing atmosphere, developing character relationships, pace and tempo in scene work is a part of the student's study. Working with designers and producers is also researched. Exercises and lectures culminate in a polished production of a one-act play. Alternate years. Prerequisite: TH 401 or permission of instructor.
- 410 Modern Drama (Same as ENG 410) (3)**  
Development of drama from Ibsen to today, including American, European, and Third World playwrights. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other literature course. Alternate years.

- 414 Shakespeare (Same as ENG 414) (3)**  
The study of representative comedies, histories, and tragedies, showing Shakespeare's practice in each type, the development of his art and craftsmanship as poet and dramatist, and the progress of his thought and style. Introduction to Shakespeare's world and theatre. Prerequisites: ENG 111, 112, and one other Literature course. Alternate years.
- 433 Acting IV (3)**  
A concentrated study in script and character analysis. Extensive scene work and improvisation is used to develop good acting techniques. Prerequisite: TH 333.
- 440 Advanced Design (3)**  
A course tailored to the individual needs of advanced design students; the focus will be on either scenery, costumes, lighting, or sound design. May be repeated for a maximum of 9 hours. Prerequisite: TH 340 or permission of instructor.
- 445 Internship (3-9)**  
(credit hours contingent upon responsibilities)  
An internship with a professional theatre company which is approved by the theatre faculty. This course allows the student to gain practical work experience in his/her chosen field. Prerequisite: Permission of theatre faculty.
- 462 Senior Seminar (3)**  
A capstone course for the theatre major. The student, in collaboration with the theatre faculty will complete an assigned project from concept to performance. The student is required to keep a journal of the process, write a research paper on the project, and complete a self-evaluation after the project is completed.

---

---

# STUDENT LIFE

---

---

It is the goal of the University to create a community in which the student can grow intellectually, emotionally, physically, socially and spiritually, thus preparing the student for lifelong learning. Student life at Averett offers a wide range of personal, social, cultural, religious, and athletic opportunities to complement academic studies. At the core of Averett's student life program are the elements, which contribute to a better community: common purpose, shared responsibility, interdependence, communication, interaction, and pride in commitment to the University.

## **Religious Life**

Averett University seeks to foster an environment where faith concerns can be explored and nurtured. In an atmosphere of care and support, students are provided with opportunities to explore their individual spirituality and to express their faith both publicly and privately. Averett values religious freedom and tolerance, and welcomes diversity as a means of broadening minds and enriching dialogue.

The Christian Student Union (CSU) promotes both the inward journey and outward expression of Christian faith. Members of CSU involve themselves in weekly worship services, bible study, community mission projects, and retreats. The CSU is open to persons of all denominations. Catholic Campus Ministry, Fellowship of Christian Athletes, Brothers and Sisters in Christ (BASIC), and area churches sponsor other religious activities. Participation in any campus ministry activity is voluntary and open to all students.

## **Social and Cultural Life**

Averett strives to enhance the overall educational experience of students through development of, exposure to, and participation in social and cultural activities. Numerous events are planned throughout the school year for the personal enjoyment and growth of our students. On-campus events are free for all Averett students, and discounted or free tickets are available to students for many community-sponsored events.

## **Averett University Campus Activities Board**

The Averett University Campus Activities Board (CAB) offers an opportunity for increased group participation and interaction while presenting socially stimulating programs to the campus community. CAB's strength is a direct result of the input and assistance from a large number of student volunteers. Several committees oversee different components of CAB and sponsor comedians, concerts, dances, and other special events throughout the year.

## **Averett Concert/Lecture Committee**

The Concert/Lecture Committee, composed of faculty, staff and students, sponsors a series of events each year for both the college and Danville community. The events include public speakers, musical performances, and dramatic productions.

## **Averett Ringers**

Averett Ringers is a hand bell choir that performs several times during the year. Membership is open to a limited number of students who complete an interview with the director, and academic credit may be awarded for each semester of participation.



## **Averett Singers**

Averett Singers is the primary choral performing organization on campus. This choir offers special opportunities for ensemble singing and individual musical expression. The main focus of the choir is to represent the University positively at both on and off campus events. Membership is open to any student who successfully completes an audition, and academic credit may be awarded for each semester of participation.

## **Student Services**

### **Academic Support Services**

Sometimes students find they are having difficulties with their class work and need help and support to get back on track. Help is available for any student who desires academic assistance through two programs, The Center for Academic Excellence and The Writing Center. Each one exists to give students the tools they need to be successful in their studies. All services are free of charge to Averett students.

### **Career Services**

Career Services is the University resource for developing career choices and strategies; for accessing internships, career fairs and job opportunities; and for developing resumes, cover letters and portfolios. Students are encouraged to use Career Services from the time they enter as freshmen to the time they leave as graduates, finding the best opportunities in their career path. Services for students and alumni include individual and group career counseling, inventories to help identify career strengths and interests, graduate school information, and career literature. We also provide a free job line and job search assistance for locating full-time, part-time, and/or summer jobs, internships, and volunteer opportunities.

### **The Center for Academic Excellence**

The Center for Academic Excellence offers a wide variety of services to students to assist in strengthening their academic performance, including peer tutoring for course work, assistance with developing reading and study skills, note-taking skills, time management and organization and learning strategies. The Center also will work with students taking standardized tests such as the GRE, to study and prepare.

Students who have a special need and use classroom accommodations can use the Center for test accommodations and additional support. The Director will also work with special need students as an advocate and help students to develop their own self-advocacy skills. The Director of the Center for Academic Excellence is Larry Compton

### **Counseling Center**

Personal counseling is available to assist students who need support and guidance in personal matters.

Occasionally, all persons encounter situations, which make them uncomfortable. In times like these, it is often helpful to supplement usual decision-making by discussing a personal problem with a trained counselor. Personal counseling at Averett is conducted in a confidential and non-judgmental manner.

The Director of Counseling is prepared to aid students faced with a variety of concerns including (but not limited to) adjustment problems, family issues, sexual identity concerns, eating disorders, relationship problems, loneliness, alcohol and drug concerns, study skills, and lack of self-confidence. If necessary, referrals may be made to a psychiatrist in the community to assist with prescriptions.

The Director of Counseling also sponsors activities designed to educate students on matters such as healthy relationships, drug and alcohol issues, and how to strengthen such personal skills as assertiveness and communication.

### **Disability Services**

Services to students with disabilities are coordinated through the Dean of Students Office in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973. Students receiving ADA accommodations are required to provide documentation of their disabilities and recommended accommodations to the Dean of Students who conducts an interview and develops an individualized learning plan with each student. Documentation must be “in hand” 30 days prior to the semester for which the student seeks accommodations.

### **Food Services**

Food service is provided by Bon Appetit during regular academic sessions. All residence hall residents must take one of three meal plans. Residents of The Commons have additional options (see Residence Life). Meals may be purchased by commuter students, faculty and staff. The dining hall is closed during all student vacations.

### **Health Services**

Averett partners with PrimeCare in Danville to provide health care services for all Averett students. All students must present their Averett ID as well as their medical insurance card and co-payment at the time of service. Transportation is provided via the Cougar Express as scheduled. For additional information regarding health services contact the Assistant to the Dean of Students (791-5620). In the event of an emergency, students should contact 911 immediately, then Security (5888) or a member of the Residence Life staff. The university requires every student to have completed a personal health history form on file in the Dean of Students Office and to show proof of medical insurance.

### **Learning Center**

The Learning Center provides tutoring assistance to students enrolled in introductory courses (100-200 levels). In addition to assistance in those courses, students receive help in refining their writing and mathematics skills, as well as time management and other study skills.

Peer tutors are upperclassmen who have been selected and trained to provide academic assistance to students. Tutors work with students on a one-on-one basis and in small group situations, as the need dictates.

This program is free to all Averett students and is coordinated by the Director of Academic Support Services.

## **New Student Orientation**

New Student Orientation is the first stop on the journey students take as they become part of the Averett family. Orientation is a process that will acclimate new students to campus life and the academic rigors of college, while having fun too. This whirlwind experience takes place during the first few days leading up to the beginning of classes. During this time, students will attend sessions about university life, complete academic assessments, meet with their advisors, learn more about financial aid and other university services, meet other new students, register for classes and much, much more. In addition, this time serves as an opportunity for new students to get settled once they have moved in to the residence halls.

## **North Campus Fitness Center**

The Fitness Center, located in the Grant Center on North Campus, has a variety of strength training and aerobic equipment. Included are both plate-loaded and pin-operated weight machines as well as free weights and medicine balls. There are also stationary bikes and treadmills for aerobic conditioning. The Center is open daily for students, staff, and faculty use. The Chair of the Physical Education Department supervises the center and is available by appointment to counsel with students regarding their fitness programs. Hours for the Fitness Center will be established and posted at the beginning of each semester.

Currently enrolled students can also use the facilities of the Danville YMCA free-of-charge. This includes the fitness equipment, weight room, gym, and the swimming pool. Students are required to show their Averett ID upon entering. Some restriction on hours of use may be imposed.

## **Athletics and Leisure Activities**

### **Intercollegiate Athletics**

In addition to the instructional program listed in this catalog, Averett provides a co-curricular program of intercollegiate athletics for interested students. Committed to providing an environment for the growth and development of the whole person, the University recognizes that athletic endeavors and academic pursuits should complement each other. Thus, it is the goal of the University that the student-athlete experience success in academics as well as in athletics. Averett is dedicated to the ideals of both fair play and amateur athletic competition as defined and guided by the National Collegiate Athletic Association.

Averett holds institutional membership in the National Collegiate Athletic Association (Division III) and the USA South Athletic Conference. These memberships make possible exciting, competitive experiences and advancement to regional and national competition for qualifying individuals and teams.

Although student-athletes are recruited by the coaches, open tryouts are held for all sports. Opportunities are available for participation in the sports listed below.

Women	Men
Basketball	Baseball
Cross Country	Basketball
Lacrosse	Cross Country
Soccer	Golf
Softball	Football
Tennis	Soccer
Volleyball	Tennis

The **Averett University Cheerleading Squad** helps to support and inspire Averett's athletic teams. Strong men and women who embody school pride and promote school spirit are selected each year.

The **Equestrian Drill Team** gives men and women riders the opportunity to participate at the regional and national level of competition through the Intercollegiate Horse Show Association. The Equestrian Drill Team is under the supervision of the Equestrian Department.

### **Intramural and Recreational Activities**

Intramural activities are available to students in such sports as basketball, dodge ball, softball football, soccer, and volleyball. In addition, other activities such as aerobics and dance lessons are offered. For more information contact the Office of Student Activities.

## **Student Organizations**

### **Student Government Association**

The Student Government Association (SGA), composed of all Averett students, is organized to give each student a sense of personal responsibility and an opportunity to participate through student body meetings, elections, and various college committees and activities. This organization permits the students at Averett to practice a considerable degree of self-governance through their elected representatives, and due to Averett's size, each student is able to make a difference.

Students may participate in the Executive Board or the Student Senate under the Constitution and bylaws of the Student Government Association.

### **Clubs and Organizations**

Alpha Chi	Ember Magazine
Alpha Eta Rho	Environmental Club
Alpha Kappa Delta	Fellowship of Christian Athletes
American Chemical Society	Gay-Straight Alliance (GSA)
Averett Anime Association	Habitat for Humanity
Averett Players	Impact
Averett Science Association	International Student Association
Averett University College Republicans	Multicultural Student Association (MSA)
Averett University Flying Cougar's	Mu Phi Epsilon
Averett University Gospel Choir	Phi Sigma Sigma
BASIC (Brothers and Sisters in Christ)	Pi Kappa Phi
Brothers With A Purpose	Sisters Implementing Sisterhood
Campus Activities Board	Sociology Club
Catholic Campus Ministries	Student Government Association
Christian Student Union	Writers' Folio Club
Criminal Justice Club	

### **Student Publications**

All interested students, especially those enrolled in the Journalism program, are encouraged to work on the University's student publications--the Ember, the literary and art magazine and The Chanticleer, the newspaper.

As the university newspaper of Averett, The Chanticleer holds membership in the Virginia Intercollegiate Press and serves as a laboratory for students enrolled in journalism classes.

## **Alumni Association**

The purpose of this Association shall be to strengthen, nourish, and perpetuate the relations among Averett University alumni and between the University and its graduates. Further, the Association will cultivate interaction with current students, promote support of the University and strive to advance the mission of the institution. Any student who has attended the University for one year and who is in good standing with Averett is a member of the Association.

The Alumni Executive Board composed of alumni members from across the decades governs the Association. This distinguished Alumni leadership provides perspective that elevates the best of Averett's history while, at the same time, charts new directions that further strengthen the impact of an Averett University degree. Persons interested in serving on the Board should contact the Alumni Office located in Alumni Hall at 1-800-AVERETT (283-7388), ext. 7252 or email at [alumni@averett.edu](mailto:alumni@averett.edu).

## **Residence Life**

Residence life at Averett is an important part of the total educational experience of the student. A description of the residence halls and the requirements for living on campus are detailed in the following sections.

### **Residence Halls**

Residence Life at Averett University is committed to "Learning Beyond the Classroom." Our residence halls are dedicated to education, personal growth, and diversity. We encourage our residents to develop positive living/learning communities and responsible self-determination. We house upper class and first year students together in several of our residence halls so that living/learning may be enhanced by experiential diversity. Most of the residence halls are set up to accommodate two students per room, encouraging the personal growth that comes from having a roommate. A limited number of single rooms are available in the traditional halls for students willing to pay the single room fee of \$200.00 per semester. A Resident Assistant staffs each floor. All Averett University residence halls and buildings are non-smoking.

Main, Davenport and Bishop Halls are all located in interconnecting buildings on the central part of the campus:

**Main Hall** is the oldest residence hall housing approximately 17 men on the second floor and approximately 24 women on the third floor. All rooms are designated singles with no additional single room fee. The rooms have high ceilings, cable television, and some rooms have sinks. Each floor has a centrally located bathroom and study lounge. Laundry facilities are located in the basement. Note: Air conditioners are not permitted in Main Hall.

**Davenport Hall** houses approximately 63 men on the second and third floor and 33 women on fourth floor. Each floor has a TV and study lounge and a centrally located bathroom. All rooms have hardwood floors, large windows, and cable television. Davenport is centrally located within this complex of buildings. Small, window mounted air conditioners are permitted in Davenport Hall.

**Bishop Hall** is a traditional style residence hall and houses 50 men. All rooms are configured as air-conditioned doubles. The floor features a study lounge, and a large, centrally located bathroom on the floor. Each room has cable television.

**Fugate Hall** is a suite-style hall located on Woodland Avenue and accommodates 70 men and 80 women. Fugate features 15 suites each housing 10 residents in five rooms with a shared central living area and bathroom. The building is air conditioned, and is wired for high-speed Internet access and cable television. All student rooms are carpeted. Fugate Hall is also home to several Theme Houses – new this year at Averett University. The building contains a large lobby, study room and laundry room. Single rooms are not available in Fugate Hall.

**Averett Commons Apartments** (The Commons) are the newest, semi-independent housing option on the Averett Campus. The three buildings accommodate a total of 140 upper class\* students in 35 apartments. Each air-conditioned apartment accommodates four students each with a single room. Each bedroom has a full size bed, desk, chair and dresser. Each apartment has two bathrooms, a common area, balcony or patio, and kitchen. Each apartment has a washer and dryer, high-speed Internet access and cable television and an Apartment Manager staffs each building. *\*Averett Commons are not available to freshmen*

To be considered for housing, resident students must complete housing information forms and sign a residence hall contract. After receiving the \$250.00 reservation deposit, the Director of Residence Life will make housing assignments for the academic year.

Students must be enrolled in at least 12 hours of course work during a regular semester in order to live in the residence halls without special permission. Housing is also available in the residence halls during each of the summer sessions, although students are not required to live on campus in the summer.

The Assistant Director of Residence Life, a member of the professional staff, lives on campus to provide supervision and guidance in the residence halls. Selected upperclassmen serve as Resident Assistants who carry out residential programs and help solve problems that arise. The Averett University Student Handbook contains the official residence hall guidelines with policies and procedures for students residing in the residence halls. All students visiting in the halls are expected to abide by university policy.

The residence halls are closed following the end of each semester/summer session. They are also closed for Thanksgiving and spring holidays. The Dining Hall is closed during all student vacations.

### **Requirements for Living in Residence Halls**

Full-time Averett University students are required to live in university residence halls unless they fall into one of the following categories:

1. students who reside with their parents or a close relative within the city of Danville or within commuting distance;
2. students who have previously established residence in the city or the immediate area while attending Danville Community College, Patrick Henry Community College, Southside Virginia Community College, Piedmont Community College, or Rockingham Community College;
3. students who have established residence in the city of Danville or the immediate area one year prior to enrolling at Averett University;
4. students who have attained at least 90 semester hours of credit;
5. students who are married and/or have a minor child;
6. students 23 years of age or older;
7. students who have served 180 consecutive days of active duty in the military. (Reserve and National Guard members would not be eligible.)
8. international students (those admitted on an I-20 form and whose I-94 entrance/exit visa is stamped F-1)

### **Visitation Policy**

Students are welcome to visit with guests in common areas in the residence halls any time of the day or night, provided that they are respectful of quiet hours and do not create public disturbances. Common areas are defined as public spaces such as designated study lounges, television lounges, or areas outside of buildings. Residents are permitted to have guests in common areas so long as the guest(s) is/are accompanied by a resident of that building. Hallways and stairwells must be kept clear at all times and are not appropriate for public gatherings.

Visitation hours at Averett University apply to private spaces (defined below) and are intended to assist in maintaining a reasonable environment in which to live and study. This policy is designed to promote privacy and courtesy, and to limit noise that adversely affects others in the residential community. Suite-common areas, such as those found in the Commons and Fugate, are considered private spaces, i.e. not appropriate for gatherings of more twice the design capacity of the suite. Please see the Guest policy in the Student Handbook 2005 – 2006 for additional information. Students may visit each other in private rooms, Fugate Suites and the Commons apartment from 9:00 am to Midnight, Sunday through Thursday, and 9:00 AM to 2:00 AM on Friday and Saturday.

## **The Student Center**

Averett University's Student Center is the newest addition to campus. The Student Center is home to our café, game room, student lounges, computer lab, meeting spaces, dining hall, clubs and organization offices, Career Services, the Dean of Students, Counseling Services, and Student Activities. This new addition provides space for club meetings, campus events, hanging out with friends, or getting together to work on a project for class. For information on reserving space in the Student Center contact the Office of Student Activities.

## **Banking**

An ATM machine is located in the Student Center and there are several banks within 5 or 10 minutes of the university.

## **Bookstore**

Textbooks and classroom supplies, as well as drinks & snacks, school spirit clothing and gifts, cards, and residence hall supplies (toothpaste, deodorant, etc.) may be purchased from the Averett Bookstore. All Averett students with a current student ID/access card are able to charge books and school supplies to their Tuition Account for the first two weeks of fall and/or spring semesters. These charges are added to the student's account at the end of that period and can be paid through the Cashier's Office. Bookstore Gift Cards are available.

## **Motor Vehicles**

All Motor Vehicles must be registered with the Office of Campus Security. Once a student has registered a vehicle, he or she is given a parking permit that must be displayed on the vehicle's rearview mirror. Parking is prohibited on the lawns and in places where the spaces have not been marked off. There are specific areas on campus for Resident Students and Commuter Students to park as well as areas designated for Faculty, Staff and Visitor parking. The University exercises the right to fine the driver of any vehicle who does not follow campus-parking regulations. Vehicles that are improperly parked in Faculty Only, Visitor Only and Library 2 Hour parking spaces are subject to towing at owner's expense. Vehicles will also be towed for repeated parking violations, circumstances where emergency lanes or service entrances are blocked, or when vehicles are not registered with the University. Averett students are not allowed to park in areas designated as **Parking By Permit Only**; these parking areas are on the street and are for city residents who live in the homes surrounding the University.

---

---

# FINANCIAL INFORMATION

---

---

## Expenses - Tuition and Fees

A college education represents a substantial monetary investment by the student and/or parents. Yet the tuition and fees charged by Averett University cover only a part of the full cost of instruction and services. Substantial contributions to the university by alumni, trustees, friends, businesses and industries, and other sources help to subsidize the education of every student at Averett.

### Schedule of Costs for 2006-2007

All tuition and fees are subject to change, without notice, by the Averett University Board of Trustees.

The charges listed below apply only to the undergraduate program offered on the main campus during regular semesters. Costs for summer sessions, the graduate programs, IDEAL, GPS, and at off-campus sites are listed in other publications appropriate to the program.

#### Tuition:

<b>Full-time</b> (12-18 hours)	\$9,381.00 per semester
Any hours over 18	\$160 per hour
<b>Part-time</b> (1-9 hours of credit)	\$318.00 per hour
<b>Part-time</b> (10 or 11 hours of credit)	\$375.00 per hour
<b>IDEAL</b> Full time (all independent studies)	\$318.00 per hour
<b>IDEAL</b> Full time (classroom and independent studies)	\$9,381.00 per semester
<b>IDEAL</b> Part time (1-11 hours)	\$318.00 per hour
<b>Graduate Education</b>	\$190.00 per hour
(If a graduate student takes an undergraduate class they pay the undergraduate hourly rate.)	
<b>Audit Fee</b>	One-half of regular hourly rate
<b>Senior Citizen Audit</b> (age 65 or over)	\$25.00 per course

**NOTE: All Virginia residents who are full-time students are eligible for tuition assistance grants from the Commonwealth of Virginia; see the Virginia Tuition Assistance Program on page 238 of this catalog.**

#### Room – Per Semester

Residence Halls	\$2,174.00
Averett Commons Apartments	\$2,527.00
Private Room Fee	\$200.00
Private Room Fee – Designated Single	\$100.00
Residence Hall Key Deposit (per year)	\$30.00
[Refunded at end of year if keys are returned]	



### **Board (Meal Plans) – Per Semester**

ALL Resident Students have the following options:

Unlimited Block Plan with \$25 Bonus Bucks	\$1,050.00
200 Block Plan with \$50 Bonus Bucks	\$1,050.00
160 Block Plan with \$75 Bonus Bucks	\$1,050.00

AVERETT COMMONS Students also have the following options:

120 Block Plan with \$75 Bonus Bucks	\$825.00
100 Block Plan with \$75 Bonus Bucks	\$725.00

### **Supplemental Fees**

Application Fee (international students only)	\$35.00
This non-refundable processing fee must accompany the application for admission.	
<b>General Fee</b> (per semester)	\$500.00
This fee is assessed to all students enrolling for 9 or more hours.	
<b>General Fee</b> (IDEAL all independent studies) per semester	\$250.00
<b>Late Payment Charge</b> to unpaid accounts 5%	
<b>Reservation Fee</b> (Resident students)	\$400.00
<b>Reservation Fee</b> (Commuting students)	\$100.00
<b>Advance Deposit for International Students</b> (Resident or Commuter)	\$6,000.00
<b>Commencement Fee</b> (Graduating seniors only)	\$100.00
<b>Cap and Gown</b> (Graduating seniors only)	Check with Bookstore

### **Special Program Fees**

These fees are assessed because of the extraordinary costs involved in the programs.

#### **Equestrian Studies**

Fees are assessed per class and are listed in the course schedule each semester.

#### **Aviation**

Pilot Training (Flight and Ground): special, per course fees are assessed and are published individually. Fees are available from the Business Office, Financial Aid Office, Flight Operations facility, and Aviation Department Chair. If the student requires extra time (particularly flight time) for the completion of a course, additional fees will be assessed. Rates are subject to change because of the unpredictability of fuel and related costs.

#### **Music**

Students taking instruction in piano, organ or voice will be assessed applied music fees in addition to tuition.

## Special Course and Laboratory Fees

Some courses require the provision of special supplies and/or facilities, e.g., laboratory sciences, studio art and photography. The costs of these resources fluctuate; thus the charges are published each semester in the schedule of class offerings. Be assured that every attempt is made to keep these fees as low as possible.

## Library Fines

Students must pay fines for the late return of library books and are liable for damage to or loss of books.

## Financial Policy

### Payment Schedules

Tuition and fees and all other university costs are due and payable at or before the beginning of each academic session. To assist families who may need some payment plan the University makes available extended payment plans through

Academic Management Services AMS  
One AMS Place  
P. O. Box 100  
Swansea, MA 02777  
(800) 635-0120  
[www.tuitionpay.com](http://www.tuitionpay.com)

Information about this plan, which provides for payment in monthly installments, is sent upon acceptance for admission.

**Unpaid accounts:** All accounts, including library and parking fines, bookstore charges and damage assessments, must be paid prior to registration for a subsequent term. Graduation and issuance of diplomas, transcripts, or course grades will be denied if accounts are not paid in full. A late payment penalty of 5 percent will be added to each bill if not paid by the end of the published drop/add period in each term, and a subsequent one and one-half percent (1 1/2%) interest charge will be added at the end of each month. Interest is calculated on the average balance in the account for the month. Should a student leave Averett University with an account due, all attorney's fees and other reasonable collection costs and charges necessary for collection will also be assessed.

**Crediting of Financial Aid:** Financial aid from any source administered by Averett University is credited to the student's account with one-half being awarded each semester. The student, or family, is responsible for the difference between actual charges and the semester amount of financial aid. The outstanding balance is due by validation.

## Refunds

Registration in the University is considered a contract binding the student and/or his/her parents for charges for the entire semester. The university makes a number of financial commitments based on enrollment at the conclusion of registration. Many of these commitments do not change even if students subsequently withdraw. However, in order to accommodate those exceptional situations which require withdrawal, the university will allow refunds to students who follow the official procedures for withdrawing from the university. Scholarships and other financial aid will be prorated in accordance with appropriate regulations and a separate refund schedule.

Any claims for refunds will be based on the date of last day in class.

**Withdrawal procedures:** Any student who withdraws from the university, regardless of the reason, must see the Dean of Student Development and complete the withdrawal process. Failure to officially withdraw will result in academic penalties. Upon withdrawal from the university the student's identification card must be surrendered to the Dean of Student Development.

Tuition - Refunds are computed on total charges for tuition and fees. The last day in class will be used in calculating all refunds.

#### Regular Semesters

If Student Withdraws	Percentage of Refund
On the first day of classes	100%
Weeks 1 and 2 (days 2 through 8)*	90%
Weeks 3 and 4 (days 9 through 19)*	50%
Weeks 4, 6, 7, and 8 (days 20 through 39)*	25%
Weeks 9 through the end of semester*	0%

\*The definition of a week for federal purposes is if a class begins during that week it is considered week one. A seven day period is not a week for federal purposes.

If changes are made and the student still is taking at least 12 hours, there will be no adjustment in the full-time tuition rate.

#### Summer Terms

If Student Withdraws	Percentage of Refund
First day of classes	90%
Remainder of first week	80%
Second week	50%
Third and Fourth weeks	0%

A statutory pro rata refund will be applied to any student who:

- is attending the school for the first time, **AND**
- leaves the school on or before the 60 percent point in the enrollment period for which he or she has been charged.

A student is attending for the first time if he or she:

- has not previously attended at least one class at the school, **or**
- received a refund of 100 percent of any charges for tuition and fees for previous attendance at the school.

A student remains a "first-time" student until he or she:

- withdraws, drops out, takes a leave of absence, or is suspended after attending one class, **OR**
- completes the enrollment period (semester) in which he or she enrolled. The second semester of attendance is not considered a "first-time" student.

#### Room and Board

There is no refund of room charges for the semester, but prorated board charges will be refunded.

#### Fees

Normally there is no refund of fees. An exception is made for fees assessed in the aviation program.

Ground School: same schedule as tuition.

Flight Courses: Fees are prorated based on time incurred; however, there is a penalty of 10 percent of the unused fee assessed for those who withdraw after the last day to add a class.

## **Financial Assistance**

Averett has an extensive program of financial assistance which serves to recognize academic achievement as well as the special financial needs of individual students. Each application for financial assistance is carefully reviewed and a package of aid is developed which will typically include a variety of types and sources of aid.

Federal regulations forbid federal financial aid to be given to any student who fails to maintain satisfactory progress. The definition of satisfactory progress involves both grade point average and the number of semester hours earned. A copy of the full policy regarding satisfactory progress may be obtained from the financial aid office.

### **Procedure for Applying for Financial Aid**

Application for financial assistance must be filed each year. Therefore, upperclassmen who wish to apply for financial assistance should proceed as follows before April 1:

Complete the Renewal Free Application for Federal Student Aid sent to you by the Federal processor if you applied the previous year.

If you did not apply the previous year, complete the Free Application for Federal Student Aid. The form is in the Financial Aid Office or you can apply electronically at [www.fafsa.ed.gov](http://www.fafsa.ed.gov).

Financial aid applicants who are residents of the state of Virginia must also apply for the Virginia Tuition Assistance Grant.

### **Financial Aid Appeals**

Financial aid appeals can be made in writing to the Scholarship Committee, Averett Financial Aid Office. The decision of the Scholarship Committee is final.

## **Scholarships and Loans**

Note: Unless otherwise indicated, application for any of the following scholarships or loans should be made through the office of Financial Aid.

### **University Sponsored**

**Averett Trustees Scholarships** are awarded to outstanding full-time entering freshmen each year. Trustees Scholarships are full tuition scholarships (less TAG award). Notification of scholarship awards will begin in February and will continue throughout the spring, with preference given to early applicants. Awards are renewable in subsequent years if the recipient has a cumulative grade point average of 3.00. Recipients are not eligible to receive any other university-sponsored or Baptist church-related awards other than the Virginia Baptist Pastor's Scholarship. Virginia residents are expected to apply for the Virginia Tuition Assistance Grant which is applied to the cost of tuition.

**Averett Merit Awards** are awarded to outstanding full-time entering freshmen and transfers. Notification of awards will begin in the fall and continue throughout the spring. Awards are renewable in subsequent years if the recipients maintain required grade point average. Averett scholarships are renewable with minimum cumulative grade point average of 2.50.

**Averett Assistance Grants** are awarded to needy students as appropriate to supplement the financial aid package. The amounts for these awards vary.

**Phi Theta Kappa** scholarships in the amount of \$500 are awarded to community college students who are members of Phi Theta Kappa. These scholarships may be renewed with cumulative grade point average of 3.00 or above.

**Piedmont Commuter Grants** are available to commuter students from the counties of Pittsylvania, Henry and Halifax in Virginia, and Caswell and Rockingham counties in North Carolina. You must be a first-time full-time student attending Averett to receive this \$2,800 grant.

**Ministerial Tuition Discounts** of \$400 are awarded to full-time resident students (\$200 for non-resident students) preparing for church-related vocations. The same discount is awarded annually to students who are daughters or sons of ministers. These awards may be renewed each year upon application. If the student changes vocational plans and does not pursue church-related work, these awards will be considered loans, repayable to Averett University. These scholarships may be renewed with a cumulative grade point average of 2.00 or above.

**Family Discount** of \$250 is awarded to each resident student if there are two or more Averett students in the same family. Full-time, non-resident students are awarded \$100 for each student if there are two or more Averett students in the same family. The awards may be renewed each year.

### **Federally Sponsored**

Students who file the Free Application for Federal Student Aid forms are automatically considered for Pell Grant, Perkins Loan, Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grant (SEOG) and College Work Study. Students must be enrolled at least half-time to be eligible.

**Federal Supplemental Educational Opportunity Grants** are available to students with financial need. These grants are from \$100 to \$4000 annually.

**Federal Pell Grants** provide for grants up to \$4050. The amount of the Pell award is determined by the financial circumstances of the student's family.

**Federal Perkins Loans** may be secured for amounts up to \$4000 annually for students who demonstrate exceptional financial need. A student is obligated to repay the loan with a low interest rate within a ten-year period after graduation.

**Federal College Work-Study Program** provides part-time work, up to twenty hours weekly, for those attending college as regular students. During the summer or other vacation periods, a student may, if funds are available, work full-time under this program. Students enrolled at least half-time are eligible to apply.

**Educational Aids for Dependents of Military Personnel.** Scholarships, grants, and loans are available from the military services for dependents of active-duty, retired, or deceased military personnel. Obtain further information from:

**Army:** The Adjutant General, Department of the Army,  
Washington, D.C. 20315, Attention AGMG-D

**Air Force:** Director of Air Force Aid Society, National  
Headquarters, Washington, D.C. 20333

**Navy and  
Marine Corps** Chief of Naval Personnel, Arlington  
Annex, Washington, D.C. 20370

**Coast Guard:** Commandant, U.S. Coast Guard, Headquarters,  
Washington, D.C. 20591

**Veterans Administration Benefits** are available to eligible individuals as Averett University has been approved to offer educational programs to persons entitled to educational benefits. Information about VA benefits at Averett University is available from the Registrar's Office.

### **State Sponsored**

**The Virginia Tuition Assistance Program.** Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia may apply for this program. Awards of \$2500 in 2005-2006 are available to all legal residents who apply by the deadline and who take a minimum of 12 semester hours each semester. The application must be completed and returned to the Financial Aid Office at Averett by July 31.

**The Virginia College Scholarship Assistance Program.** Students who are legal residents of the Commonwealth of Virginia and who are at least half-time each semester may be considered for the College Scholarship Assistance Program which is need-based.

### **Baptist Church Related**

**Virginia Baptist Pastors Scholarships** of \$500 per year are available to students who are recommended by pastors of churches affiliated with the Baptist General Association of Virginia.

### **Other Scholarships**

For returning students, applications may be made to the Financial Aid Office.

**Adopt-A-Scholar Program** provides scholarships ranging from \$500-\$5000 per year to Averett students, based upon financial need, scholastic record, and general leadership qualities. These scholarships are provided by donors who wish to provide the current financial assistance needed by individual students.

**Alumni Association** was established and endowed by Averett University alumni. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Margarette M. Aldredge Scholarship** was established and endowed by James H. Aldredge, Jr. in memory of his sister and Averett alumna, Margarette M. Aldredge. The scholarship recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, demonstrate financial need, show a strong desire to complete an undergraduate degree, and be a good citizen.

**The American National Bank and Trust Company Scholarship** was established by the bank to provide scholarship funds for students who demonstrate financial need.

**The Joseph B. Anderson Student Aid Fund** provides scholarships to young women who demonstrate financial need. First preference is given to those who live in the Spring Garden area of Pittsylvania County, Virginia.

**The Paschal Lawrence Anderson and Ellen Hawkins Anderson Scholarship** was endowed by P. L. Anderson, Jr. in memory of his parents. The recipient(s) should demonstrate financial need, maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. First consideration is to be given to qualified students related to Paschal Lawrence and Ellen Hawkins Anderson.

**Agnes H. Athey** was established and endowed by The Estate of Mary A. Hoffmeister. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to music students, a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**Palte Pallitz Auerbach** was established and endowed by Interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**Averett Players** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Randy Monteith Anderson Fund** was established in memory of Mrs. Anderson, who attended Averett, by her husband and friends. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years. Preference is given students from West Virginia.

**The Averett Student Foundation**, a student organization of Averett University comprised of 30 selected juniors and seniors, raises money during each academic session to recognize an entering freshman that has demonstrated qualities of leadership while in high school.

**The Ella Vaden Aylor Scholarship** was established and endowed by Carrie Tate Aylor and Louise Aylor Montague, both Averett alumnae, in memory of their mother, Ella Vaden Aylor, Averett Class of 1900. This scholarship is awarded to one or more Christian students majoring in music. Preference will be given to a student(s) from Virginia and/or North Carolina. The recipient must demonstrate financial need and skill.

**The Bruce James Barbour Family Scholarship** was endowed by the Barbour family. Preference is given to an applicant who has been active in a church and who demonstrates financial need. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.0 or better.

**Averett alumna Mary Lou Martin Barr in memory of her husband, Brantley F. Barr, endowed The Brantley Barr Scholarship Fund.** This scholarship is awarded to students who have passed the traditional age for college attendance. Preference will be given first to students from the city of Danville, second from the county of Pittsylvania, third from the adjacent cities and counties.

**The Barksdale Foreign Study Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mary Morten Barksdale to provide funds for an Averett student to study in a foreign country. The recipient is to be enrolled as a full time student at Averett with 60 or more academic credits and shall have a cumulative grade point average of 2.5. The study abroad shall be a program for academic credit sponsored directly by Averett or a program of study through which academic credit will be granted by Averett University. Apply to the Office of the Vice President for Academic Affairs.

**Walter W. Barrick Scholarship** was established and endowed by Walter W. Barrick. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to an undergraduate student, full-time, aviation/aeronautics major and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Beazley Scholar** recipients must be a junior in the upper 10% of class and has taken at least 30 hours at Averett and demonstrate leadership qualities. The recipient is chosen after registration to be given at opening convocation. Must sign agreement to attend the scholar ceremony that year and needs financial assistance.

**The Thomas and Isabelle Boyd Scholarship** was established and endowed by the estate of Mrs. Lightfoot Boyd Fourqurean, Averett College Class of 1931. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Halifax County, Virginia, who has demonstrated financial need.

**The David Strouse Blount Education Foundation scholarships** are given to residents of Roanoke and surrounding counties who demonstrate financial need. The following minimum grade point averages are required every semester: Freshman, 1.0; Sophomore, 1.5; Junior and Senior 2.0.

**The Bradley Family Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumnus, H. Hawkins Bradley '48. This scholarship will be awarded to traditional or nontraditional students majoring in Business Administration who have maintained a grade point average of 2.5 or above and have demonstrated traits of good citizenship and demonstrate financial need.

**Russell C. Brachman Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett University, Dr. Edward W. Fisher, and Averett University Professor of Biology. This scholarship will be awarded to Junior or Senior majoring in Biology with a minimum grade point average of 3.0

**Patty Saunders Cahill Scholarship** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving traditional or non-traditional full-time undergraduate student with demonstrated financial need, must maintain 2.5 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Elizabeth and James Bustard Distinguished Award** was established at Averett under the provisions of a trust created by the will of Elizabeth B. Bustard. This award is to be made at commencement to one or more graduating seniors selected by the faculty and Board of Trustees, who excel in high ideals of living, in spiritual qualities and in generous service to others, for use in higher education.

**The Mrs. Janet H. Campbell Scholarship** was given and endowed in her honor by her husband, Dr. Frank R. Campbell. The scholarship will be awarded to a deserving student each year from either the Roanoke Valley area or Statesville, North Carolina, area.

**The Alexander Berkeley Carrington, Jr. Scholarship** was established and endowed in Mr. Carrington's memory. This scholarship is to be awarded to deserving full-time undergraduate students in the Honors Program.

**Galilee Clark Scholarship** was established and endowed by Galilee Clark. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Class of 1941 Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Averett College Class of 1941. This scholarship is to be awarded to a student who demonstrates financial need, maintains a grade point average of 3.0 or better, and who is in good standing both academically and socially.

**The Class of 1948 Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Averett College Class of 1948. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing.

**The Class of 1950 Alumni Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Averett College Class of 1950. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student who demonstrates financial need and who is in good academic standing.

**The Class of 1954 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1954. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Class of 1955 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1955. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Class of 1960 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1960. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.



**The Class of 1968 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1968. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Class of 1976 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1976. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Class of 1985 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett College Class of 1985. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**P.F. Conway Scholarship** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Law Firm of Daniel, Vaughan, Medley and Smitherman, P.C. Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the firm of Daniel, Vaughan, Medley and Smitherman. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated financial need. The recipient shall have maintained a grade point average of 2.5 or higher and shall have demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

**The Dimon Incorporated Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dimon Incorporated. First preference shall be given to students who are dependents of full-time employees of DIMON Incorporated. Second preference shall be given to students who are dependents of other local tobacco industry employees. Third preference shall be given to students who have lived for at least one year in Danville, Pittsylvania County or the surrounding area. The recipient must be full-time student and remain in good academic standing. The scholarship is renewal if student maintains a 2.5 GPA for up to 4 years.

**The Ruth Walton English Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Ruth Walton English. The recipient shall maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average, demonstrate good citizenship and have financial need.

**The Mary C. Fugate Scholarship**, established and endowed by Averett College alumnae in memory of former Averett Dean, Mary C. Fugate, is awarded each year to a young woman majoring in Education who best demonstrates those ideals exemplary of the life of Mary C. Fugate. The Scholarship Committee from nominations submitted by the Averett faculty shall select the recipient.

**The George and Betty Falk - Walker - Morris Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. George Falk, in celebration of the lives of Mrs. Falk's parents, Durwood and Katherine M. Walker, and her grandparents, Dr. Clifford and Mary B. Morris and Jacob and Annis A. Walker. Preference will be given to a person in need who exhibits strong character and fine virtues.

**Mamie Strickland Farmer Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mamie Strickland Farmer. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**Inez C. Gaddy Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. Clifford G. Gaddy. Preference shall be given to a student graduating from a high school in Pittsylvania County, Virginia, Danville, or Caswell County, North Carolina. Student must demonstrate need.

**The Roy G. and Joan F. Gignac Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mr. and Mrs. Roy G. Gignac. Preference will be given to a student graduating from a high school in Pittsylvania County, Virginia, Danville, Virginia, or Caswell County, North Carolina, who demonstrates financial need. Preference will be given to a student who attends Sacred Heart Catholic Church of Danville, Virginia.

**The Emily Swain Grousbeck Scholarship**, established and endowed by Mrs. Grousbeck, is awarded to students who demonstrate financial need and who are in good academic and social standing with the University.

**The John O. and Annie Newman Gunn Scholarship** was endowed through the generosity of John O. and Annie Newman Gunn of Yanceyville, North Carolina. While the scholarship is not restricted, the donors wish to encourage students for full-time Christian service and give preference to students from Caswell County, North Carolina.

**Charles Harris Scholarship** was established and endowed by The Board of Directors of First State Bank. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate black student, full-time, majoring in education or planning to complete their degree in the field of Business. The recipient must be rank in the upper 20% of their high school graduating class and demonstrate financial need. The recipient must live within a 30-mile radius of the First State Bank. The award may be renewable up to four years.

**The J. Bryant Heard Scholarship** was endowed by Major Olga S. Heard, '33, U.S. Army (Retired) in memory of her father. The scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg majoring in mathematics.

**The Mrs. Bryant Heard Scholarship** was established by her daughter and Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, U.S. Army (Ret.) and endowed through the generosity of the Heard family. This scholarship is awarded to a Virginia resident with first preference given to a student from Danville or Lynchburg majoring in English or Voice.

**Major Olga S. Heard** was established and endowed by Major Olga S. Heard. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate black student, full-time, majoring in History. The recipient must maintain a 3.0 GPA. The award may be renewable up to four years.

**Vesa Hiltunen International Student Scholarship** was established and endowed by interested parties. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**Moonja Hong Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. Inja Hong. This scholarship is to be awarded in the each year to a deserving undergraduate sophomore student. Priority given to students without living parents or to students of a single parent. The scholarship is renewable a long as the student maintains a 3.0 grade point average.

**The Richard and Louise Hinton Scholarship** was endowed by Averett alumna Anna Lee Hinton Fetter in memory of her parents Richard and Louise Hinton. Preference is given to students from the Northern Neck of Virginia or from the state of Virginia who demonstrates financial need.

**The Hopkins-Bryan Scholarship** of Averett is funded annually through the Ira and Bertha Hopkins and Nancy Hopkins Bryan Trust Fund managed and held in perpetuity by the Virginia Baptist Foundation, Inc. The recipient is to be a Virginia Baptist student who was a member of a Virginia Baptist church of the Baptist General Association of Virginia prior to enrolling at Averett.

**The Douglas W. Hosier Endowed Scholarship** was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, classmates and friends, in memory of Douglas Hosier, Averett College Class of 1983. The recipient will be a full-time student who has demonstrated financial need and good citizenship. Preference will be given to a qualified student who is related to any deceased Averett University alumni, or to any international student who meets the criteria.

**The Hudson Scholarship** was endowed by Lester and Jane Hudson and is awarded to a junior or senior. The recipient must maintain a 3.0 grade point average.

**The Bonnie Humphreys Scholarship** was established through a bequest from the Estate of Bonnie W. Humphreys. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and a resident of the city of Danville or Pittsylvania County. May be renewable up to four years.

**Jones Family Scholarship** was established through the estate of Dr. Charles E. Jones. This scholarship shall be awarded to a student pursuing an education in the area of religious studies and demonstrate need.

**Ollie Y. Jennings Scholarship** was established and endowed by Ollie Y. Jennings Scholarship. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Lovick H. Kernodle Scholarship** was established by the Lovick H. Kernodle Foundation for a graduate of George Washington High School, Danville, Virginia, who has demonstrated outstanding scholarship and good citizenship and who has financial need.

**The Howard and Margaret Lee Scholarship** was established by Averett faculty and staff to honor the contributions of Dr. and Mrs. Howard Lee to Averett University. The applicant must demonstrate financial need.

**The Robert J. and Irene W. Mann Scholarship Fund** honors the long-standing and sacrificial efforts of Reverend and Mrs. Mann. Preference is given to students from Patrick and Albemarle Counties and the city of Charlottesville, Virginia.

**Marshall Concrete Products Scholarship** is awarded to employees of Marshall Concrete Products or their dependents or grandchildren. The recipient shall have maintained at least a 2.5 GPA and shall have demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

**The MBA Scholarship** was established and endowed by the Averett MBA Cluster-146 and the Estate of Ruth Irene Baker, Averett Class of 1945. This scholarship, for MBA students, will be awarded each year in each of the four regions of the non-traditional programs. Each recipient cannot be receiving other financial assistance including employer tuition reimbursement. Applicants entering the program must have an overall grade point average of 3.5 from undergraduate study. Applicants in the program are to have a grade point average of 3.5. Previous recipients may reapply, but are not guaranteed a second award. Applications available at each regional office.

**Carroll and Ruth McDowell Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Louise Hall McDowell '57 and her husband Charles, in memory of his parents. Preference will be given to a traditional or nontraditional student from a rural section of Halifax County, Virginia, pursuing a degree in religious studies or in education. The scholarship is for four years providing that the student remains in good academic, demonstrate need, 2.0 GPA or above and social standing.

**Clara Barbour Meadows Scholarship** was established and endowed by Charles S. Barbour. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**Evelyn Miller Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by current and retired Averett College faculty and staff, family, and friends. Recipient(s) shall be student(s) majoring in Liberal Studies with PK-12 Teacher Licensure, Music, or any major leading toward Secondary teacher Licensure with a minimum GPA 3.0.

**The Onnie H. and Bertie Milloway Scholarship Fund** was established in their memory to assist freshmen of Averett University. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years. The recipients must be local which include Danville, Pittsylvania County and Caswell County.

**The Spencer and Mary Elizabeth Morten Scholarship** was established and endowed by Mary Elizabeth Bassett Morten. Preference is given to traditional or non-traditional students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Bassett Mirror Company and/or Bassett Furniture Industries, Inc. Second preference is given to students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area of Northern Henry County and Eastern Patrick County, Virginia. Applicants must have at least a 2.5 grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

**The Tony and Reva Myers Scholarship** was endowed by Averett alumnus, Dr. Danny C. Myers, '72, in honor of his parents. This scholarship is awarded to a student from Pittsylvania County, Virginia, majoring in mathematics or science. Preference shall be given to a student from a home where only one natural parent resides and from whom no financial support is available. The recipient must maintain a 3.2 GPA while in high school and/or college.

**The Neil Andrew Nesterak Scholarship** was established and endowed by his parents, members of his family, Averett College classmates and friends, in memory of Neil Andrew Nesterak, Averett Class of 1983. This scholarship is to be awarded to a student who demonstrates an interest and enjoyment working with young people in both sports and outdoor activities. The recipient must maintain a grade point average of 2.5 or above and have demonstrated financial need.

**The Mildred Fulton Owen Scholarship** was endowed by her son, Claude S. Owen, Jr., and daughter-in-law, Lamar Lewis Owen ('65). This scholarship is awarded to one or more female residents of Pittsylvania County who are full-time students at Averett.

**The Peoples Mutual Telephone Company Scholarship** was established and endowed by the Board of Directors of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company of Gretna, Virginia. Preference is given to students who are employees, spouses or children/grandchildren of employees of Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. Second Preference is given to traditional or non-traditional students who have lived for at least one year in the geographic area served by the Peoples Mutual Telephone Company. The recipient must maintain at least a 2.5 grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

**The Pittsylvania Baptist Association Scholarship** was established and endowed by members of Baptist Churches of the Pittsylvania Baptist Association of the Baptist General Association of Virginia. The Averett Scholarship Committee in consultation with the faculty of the Averett Religion Department shall determine the recipient of the scholarship. All students who are eligible for these funds are to be notified. The recipient must be participating in an internship under the guidance of the Religion Department, demonstrate financial need, and must be in good standing with the university academically and socially.

**The Alfred Hugo Radke and Gerda Else Radke Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett Alumnus, Dr. Danny Myers, '72, and his wife Ingrid, in honor of Mrs. Myers' parents, Alfred and Gerda Radke. As Mr. and Mrs. Radke immigrated to the United States from Germany in 1950, this scholarship is to be awarded to an international student or a first generation American student whose intent is to graduate from Averett University and demonstrates financial need.

**The David S. Reynolds Theatre Arts Scholarship** was established and endowed by his father and his sister, Claude D. Reynolds and Claudette Reynolds Keeter. This scholarship will be awarded annually to a student majoring in theatre. Awards will be given on the basis of a student audition, academic performance (a minimum 3.0 grade point average) and demonstrated traits of good citizenship.

**Herman E. and Cora H. Bond Reid Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Estate of Cora H. Bond Reid. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student who is at least 30 years of age or older, full-time, and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Katherine Payne Rigney '42 Scholarship** was established and endowed by Katherine Payne Rigney. The recipient must be a resident of Virginia and majoring in Education. Preference given to a transfer student that has completed a community college program. The recipient must have a 3.0 GPA prior to enrolling at Averett.

**The Rippe Art Scholarship** was established and endowed by A. Benjamin Rippe in memory of Karen Rippe Steinreich, Sonia Lubin Rippe, E. Louis Rippe and David H. Gladstone for students in the visual arts or music. The faculty of the Art Department in conjunction with the Scholarship Committee shall make the selection of the recipient.

**The O. Lewis Roach Jr. Scholarship** was established and endowed by Alyce Amory Roach in memory of her husband, Averett College trustee emeritus, O. Lewis Roach, Jr. The recipient must major in business administration. A 3.0 GPA or its equivalent is demanded in any academic program that the recipient completed or was enrolled in prior to Averett University. Preference will be given to a resident of Virginia.

**The George and Leah Shields Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. George H. Shields, Jr. The scholarship is awarded to a student graduating from Dan River High School. Scholarship is non-renewable. This will be awarded to students of average or slightly above average academic ability. Preference will be given to students with demonstrated financial need.

**Othelia and William Shelhorse Scholarship** was established and endowed by Othelia Shelhorse Anderson. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate, must be a resident of Danville or Pittsylvania County, full-time, chosen based on a combination of individual merit and financial need. May be renewable up to four years.

**The Florrie Storey Shultz Business Department Scholarship** was established and endowed by her nephew Robert H. Shultz, Jr., and the estate of Florrie Storey Shultz, Averett College Class of 1928. The recipient may be a traditional or non-traditional student, majoring in the field of business, who demonstrates financial need, and must have at least a 3.0 GPA and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. This award is available to incoming freshmen provided they have met the GPA requirements during their senior year of high school.

**The Elizabeth R. Smith/Tom Wilson Theatre Arts Scholarship** was established by Averett's graduates of the Theatre Arts Department. The recipient shall have maintained an overall grade point average of 2.0 and a 3.0 in their major area of study. The selection of the recipient(s) shall be made by a Theatre Arts Scholarship Department in conjunction with the College's Scholarship Committee.

**The Louise Goodwin Snavely Scholarship** was established and endowed by Louise Goodwin Snavely, Averett Class of 1941, in memory of her parents, Nicie B. and John S. Snavely. Preference shall be given to traditional or non-traditional students who have demonstrated need and who reside in the area of Virginia to include, beginning on the east, Giles, Montgomery, Floyd and Carroll Counties and to include all other counties west of these to the western end of the Commonwealth of Virginia. Within this area, preference shall be given to females from Smyth, Washington and Wythe Counties in the order as listed. The recipient shall have maintained at least a grade point average of 2.5 or above and shall demonstrate traits of good citizenship.

**The Bessie Myers Suddarth Scholarship** was established and endowed by the members of the Myers family in memory of Averett alumna, Bessie Myers Suddarth. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student who demonstrates traits of good citizenship and financial need. Must have minimum 2.5 GPA. First consideration to qualified students from Danville or Pittsylvania County.

**The Wycliffe Swain Scholarship** was established and endowed by his sister, Emily Swain Grousbeck. This scholarship is awarded to one or more students majoring in music that demonstrate the greatest financial need and/or at the discretion of the Faculty of the Music Department.

**The Bernard C. and Barbara S. Swann Scholarship**, endowed by Bernard and Barbara Swann, is awarded to students who are recommended by their home church and meet the following criteria (in order of preference): A Christian student preparing for a church-related vocation; a Virginia Baptist student; a Christian student in good standing with Averett University.

**The Dewey W. Swicegood Scholarship** was established in a bequest of Dewey W. Swicegood and endowed by Mrs. Dewey W. Swicegood in memory of her husband. Preference is given to a student from Danville or Pittsylvania County who demonstrates financial need.

**The Homer T Thomasson Scholarship** was established by the Homer T Thomasson Fund Directors from contributions received from friends and colleagues in memory of Homer T Thomasson. The recipient must be preparing for a career in the field of communications.

**Vinson Family Fund Scholarship** was established and endowed by Dr. and Mrs. Richard G. Vinson. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a student enrolled in the division of Arts & Sciences. The recipient must exhibit strong character and fine virtues. May be renewable up to four years if recipient maintains a 2.8 GPA and remains in good academic and social standing.

**The Virginia Bank and Trust Company Scholarship** was established by The Virginia Bank and Trust Company. This award is available to a full-time, senior student who lives within 30 miles of the bank's main office in Danville. Applicants must be majors in either Business Administration: Management Science, Business Administration: Marketing, Management Finance or Business Administration: Accounting. Must have a grade point average of at least 2.75, demonstrate financial need, and have a record of good citizenship.

**The Virginia Collegium Scholarship** recipient is chosen by Collegium (Honors) Committee. The student must have written agreement to attend the scholar ceremony that year and be in honors program.

**The Dr. Bernice Heard Waddell Scholarship** was established and endowed by Averett alumna, Major Olga S. Heard, U.S. Army (Ret.), in memory of her sister, Dr. Bernice Heard Waddell who served as a professor and as acting President of Stratford College. For twelve years she served as professor of foreign languages at Averett. This scholarship is awarded to an upperclassman who has demonstrated interest and ability in the study of French and/or Spanish and who desires to pursue the study of French and/or Spanish beyond the intermediate level. The Department of Foreign Languages Faculty and the University's Scholarship Committee make selection of the student.

**The Nancy Frazer Wakeman, '31, Scholarship** was established and endowed by her husband, Truman J. Wakeman. The recipient must have a 2.5 or better grade point average and demonstrate traits of good citizenship. The applicant must need financial assistance.

**Grace W. Garrett and Harry B. Waller Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by Harry B. Waller. This scholarship is to be awarded each year to a deserving undergraduate student, full-time, demonstrate financial need and may be renewable up to four years.

**The Lettie Pate Whitehead Foundation** provides scholarships for Christian female residents of Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Tennessee, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana who are studying Medical Technology. The student must demonstrate financial need.

**Dot R. Williamson Scholarship** was established and endowed by The Williamson Family. The selection will be determined by audition given by the Music Department. The selection will be based on demonstrated skill and financial need.

**The Lawrence G. "Lefty" Wilson Memorial Scholarship** was established and endowed by family and friends, in memory of Lawrence G. Lefty Wilson. Preference will be given to a graduate of George Washington High School in Danville, VA. If a student is not available from GWHS, preference will be given to a student from Southside VA. The recipient will have demonstrated traits of good citizenship, financial need and sportsmanship.

**The Louise Rowlett Wingo Scholarship** is an endowed scholarship for students preparing to teach mathematics which was established by Mrs. Sara Gregory and Mrs. Gene Moore in memory of their aunt, Louise Rowlett Wingo. The recipient must demonstrate financial need and must teach one year for each year he/she receives the scholarship.

**Haley-Wood Scholarship** was established and endowed by Josephine Elizabeth Wood. The recipient must be a resident of Virginia, female and have demonstrated academic achievement. Student must have 3.0 prior to enrolling at Averett.

**The Anne Worthington Scholarship** was endowed by Dr. Worthington '74, is awarded to one or more non-traditional junior or senior students majoring in the humanities or in science. A grade point average of 3.0 or better and demonstrated financial need is required.

Averett alumni Garland and Harriet B. Wyatt endowed The **Garland and Harriet Wyatt Scholarship**. This scholarship is awarded to student(s) majoring in business field.

## Annual Scholarships

**Adopt-A-Scholar Program** provides scholarships ranging from \$500-\$5000 per year to Averett students, based upon financial need, scholastic record, and general leadership qualities. These scholarships are provided by donors who wish to provide the current financial assistance needed by individual students.

**The CIT Group/Factoring Scholarship** is an annual award for a full-time student from the Danville area who demonstrates financial need, academic promise and whose school and/or community involvement indicate leadership potential. The recipient must possess a 3.0 or better GPA. The recipient shall be selected by the College Scholarship Committee.

**William A. Ellis III Annual Scholarship** provided by the family and friends of William A. Ellis, III, a member of the Averett University class of 1993, in honor of his commitment to the aviation and aeronautics program. Awarded to a deserving student with first preference given to those majoring in aeronautics.

**Regina Schneck Joseph Annual Scholarship** provided by Mr. Franklin Joseph and awarded to students who have been in foster care with the Danville Department of Social Services for six months or more presently or in the past. Recipients shall be full-time students in a program leading to a degree. Special consideration is given to students currently in foster care at the time of the application process.

**Evelyn Miller Memorial Scholarship** provided by current and retired Averett University faculty and staff, family, and friends of Evelyn Miller. Funds are awarded to students majoring in Liberal Studies with PK-6 Teacher Licensure, Music, or any major leading toward Secondary Teacher Licensure with a minimum GPA of 3.0. Recipients shall be chosen based on contributions to the major, overall character, fine virtues and good social standing. This award is need and/or merit-based.

Scholarships and awards for honor students are found on page 37 of this catalog.

## Educational Loans

**Federal Stafford Student Loans** (formerly Guaranteed Student Loans) are made available to any college student by private lending agencies or public agencies, depending on the state. Students should apply to their hometown bank. The federal government will pay the interest while they are attending Averett. Repayment of the principal and the interest begins when the student has ceased his course of study. A student must establish eligibility or ineligibility for the Pell Grant by completing the Free Application for Federal Student Aid before the guaranteed student loan can be processed.

## Other Loans

**Parents Loan to Undergraduate Students (PLUS)**. This loan is made to the parents of undergraduate students. The loan provides additional funds for educational expenses and is made by a lender such as a bank, credit union, or savings and loan association.

---

---

# AVERETT UNIVERSITY

---

---

## Board of Trustees

### Trustee Emeriti

Mrs. Brantley F. Barr.....Danville, Virginia  
Dr. Garland M. Wyatt.....Danville, Virginia

### Officers

Dr. Claude B. Owen, Jr..... Chairperson  
Dr. Frank W. Maddux ..... First Vice-Chairperson  
Francis E. McGovern ..... Second Vice-Chairperson  
P. Niles Daly, Jr. ....Secretary

### Term to Expire in 2007

Edward M. Bishop, Retired Telecommunications Specialist,  
Virginia State Corporation Commission .....Glen Allen, Virginia  
George B. Daniel, Attorney/President,  
George B. Daniel, P.A. .... Yanceyville, North Carolina  
Dr. Claude B. Owen, Jr., Retired Chief Executive Officer,  
DIMON, Inc. ....Glen Allen, Virginia  
Joseph H. Vipperman, Retired Executive Vice President,  
American Electric Power..... Moneta, Virginia  
Ebb H. Williams, III, Attorney,  
Ebb H. Williams, III, P.C. ....Martinsville, Virginia

### Term to Expire in 2008

Dr. Jim Baucom, Jr., Pastor,  
Columbia Baptist Church..... Falls Church, Virginia  
Ruby L. Dillard, Retired Principal,  
Amelia County Elementary School .....Amelia, Virginia  
Dr. Franklin W. Maddux, Physician/Pres., Danville Urologic Clinic,  
Pres., Gamewood Data Systems, Inc. ....Danville, Virginia  
Lewis A. Martin III, Senior Partner,  
Martin & Raynor, P.C..... Charlottesville, Virginia  
Francis E. McGovern, Professor of Law,  
Duke University .....Durham, North Carolina  
Jackson Reasor, President and Chief Executive Officer  
Old Dominion Electric Cooperative .....Richmond, Virginia  
John D. Vigouroux, '82, Chairman/CEO,  
Cranite Systems .....San Jose, California

### Term to Expire in 2009

The Reverend Daniel Carlton, '90,  
Pastor, Spring Hill Baptist Church..... Ruckersville, Virginia  
Gonzalee Ford, '58..... Delray Beach, Florida  
Mike K. Hendrickson, Retired,  
Corning Glass Works.....Danville, Virginia  
James W. Jennings, Attorney,  
Woods Rogers PLC. .... Roanoke, Virginia



Lindsey Moynihan, '65 ..... Franklin Lakes, New Jersey  
 Mary M.G. Riddle, Vice President,  
     Coca-Cola ..... Atlanta, Georgia  
 Richard Roccesano, '81, Executive Vice President,  
     Mark Properties ..... Raleigh, North Carolina  
 Bobbye Raye Womack, '79..... Danville, Virginia

**Term to Expire in 2010**

Dr. Martti Ahtisaari, Former President of Finland ..... Helsinki, Finland  
 John S. Barr, Attorney,  
     McGuireWoods, LLP..... Richmond, Virginia  
 Niles P. Daly, President,  
     Daly Seven, Inc..... Danville, Virginia  
 Jacob E. Frith II, '77, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer,  
     Frith Construction Company..... Martinsville, Virginia  
 Dale P. Lee, Vice President and Secretary,  
     RGC Resources..... Roanoke, Virginia  
 James J. Roberts, President,  
     Kenbridge Construction Company..... Kenbridge, Virginia  
 The Reverend Dr. Daniel E. Scott ..... Roanoke, Virginia  
 Henry I. Slayton, Jr., Retired Executive,  
     Bank of Virginia ..... Danville, Virginia  
 L. Hampton Wilkins, '73 & '87, President,  
     Wilkins & Co. Realtors..... Danville, Virginia

**Board of Associates**

The Board of Associates is an advisory group of outstanding business, professional, and community leaders that works with the administration and Board of Trustees to promote present and future programs of the University.

Mr. Charles Abercrombie..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Nancy Blaylock..... Williamsburg, Virginia  
 Mrs. Martha Jordan Chukinas ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Barbara Shields Collie, '50..... Keeling, Virginia  
 Dr. Fred B. Cornett..... Pittsboro, North Carolina  
 Mr. Donald J. Cox ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Dan Daniel ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mr. Randy Davis ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mr. Fred L. Evans, Jr..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. B. Lynne Ingram Finney '84..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Delores Gourley ..... Blairs, Virginia  
 Mrs. Virginia Hall ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Dorothy O. Harris ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mr. Wayne Hutchins ..... Chapel Hill, North Carolina  
 Mr. Tim Kernodle ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mr. Donald Merricks, '74 & '91 ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Dr. H. Marvin Midkiff..... Martinsville, Virginia  
 Dr. N. Andrew Overstreet ..... Raleigh, North Carolina  
 Mrs. Patricia Plowden ..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mr. Claude Reynolds..... Callands, Virginia  
 Mr. Mike Rieley ..... Bedford, Virginia  
 Mrs. Alyce A. Roach..... Danville, Virginia  
 Mrs. Ruth R. Sager..... Danville, Virginia

## Faculty (Arts and Sciences)

S. Gail Allen, B.M.Ed., M.M., Ed.D.

Professor

Music

B.M.Ed., M.M., Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Stephen C. Ausband, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

English

B.A., Guilford College; M.A., Ph.D., Tulane University.

Richard S. Breen, B.A., M.F.A.

Associate Professor

Theatre

B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., Western Illinois University.

S. Lee Burton, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.

Assistant Professor

Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science

B.S., Appalachian State University; M.S., Old Dominion University; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.

Lyle E. Cady, Jr.

Associate Professor

Business Administration

B.A., Rutgers State University; M.S., Seton Hall University; M.B.A., New York University; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University

James S. Caldwell, B.S., Ph.D.

Professor

Biology

B.S., University of Texas at Austin; Ph.D., Wake Forest University, Bowman Gray School of Medicine; Post-doctoral Study: Harvard Medical School.

Robert M. Carlsen III, B.S., M.A., Ph.D.

Associate Professor

Psychology

B.S., Averett College; M.A., East Carolina University; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.

Barbara A. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Spanish

B.A., College of St. Elizabeth; M.A., State University of New York at Binghamton; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Rebecca L. Clark, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.

Professor

Sociology

B.A., Stratford College; M.A., Ph.D., Arizona State University.

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.  
Director of Library  
Associate Professor  
B.A., Syracuse University; M.S.L.S., University of North Carolina.

Donald Travis Ethington, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Mathematics  
B.A., Centre College of Kentucky; M.S., Mississippi State University; Ph.D., University of Georgia.

Jeffrey A. Fager, B.A., M.Th., Ph.D.  
Dean of Arts and Sciences  
B.A., University of Evansville; M.Th., Southern Methodist University; Ph.D., Vanderbilt University.

Jane Faulkner, A.A., A.A.S., B.A., M.S.  
Assistant Professor  
Equestrian Studies  
A.A., B.A., Colorado Women's College; A.A.S., Ohio State University; M.S., North Carolina State University.

Richard M. Ferguson, Jr., B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science  
B.S., James Madison University; M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Virginia.

Jackie W. Finney, B.A., M.F.A.  
Associate Professor  
Theatre  
B.A., Averett College; M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Edward W. Fisher, B.S., M.S., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Biology  
B.S., M.S., Memphis State University; Ph.D., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.

J. Thomson Foster, B.S.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science  
B.S.Ed., M.Ed., Mississippi College; Ph.D., University of Southern Mississippi.

Clara G. Fountain, B.A., M.S.L.S.  
Humanities Librarian, Archivist  
Associate Professor  
B.A., M.S.L.S., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.

Ann D. Garbett, A.B., M.A., Ph.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
English  
A.B., Franklin College; M.A., Ph.A., Ph.D., University of Arkansas.

John M. Guarino, B.S., A.M., M.B.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Business Administration  
B.S., State College at Bridgewater; A.M., Dartmouth College; M.B.A., University of Connecticut; Ph.D., Syracuse University.

Ruth B. Haffner, B.A.  
Library Acquisitions Coordinator  
Instructor  
B.A., Asbury College.

Michael G. Hammonds, B.A., M.A.  
Associate Professor  
English and Journalism  
B.A., M.A., University of Oklahoma.

Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.  
Social Sciences/Electronic Resources Librarian  
Associate Professor  
A.A., Louisburg College; B.A., Elon College; M.L.S., North Carolina Central University.

Laura L. Hartman, A.A., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Sociology/Criminal Justice  
A.A., Cuyahoga County Community College; B.A., Arizona State University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Texas at Austin.

Anna D. Hatten, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Psychology  
B.A., Mercer University; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Jean L. Hatten, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Psychology  
B.A., Mercer University; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Jack I. Hayes, Jr., B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
W. C. (Dan) Daniel Professor of History and Political Science  
History  
B.A., Hampden-Sydney College; M.A., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Ph.D., University of South Carolina.

Betty B. Heard, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor English  
B.A., Southern Methodist University; M.A., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Virginia Henderson, A.A.S., B.S., M.Ed.  
Equestrian Studies  
Assistant Professor  
A.A.S., Ohio State University; B.S., Averett University; M.Ed., Lynchburg College.

Stephen M. Hecox, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
English  
B.A., M.A., Ph.D., University of Nevada

David E. Hoffman, A.B., M.A., Ed.D.  
Professor  
English and Journalism  
B.A., M.A., Marshall University; Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Tonja M. Hudson, B.S., M.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Mathematics  
B.S., Averett University; M.A., Wake Forest University.

Michael Jernigan, B.A., M.I.S, Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
Business Administration  
B.A., Old Dominion University; M.I.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University

Vincent P. Kania, B.S., M.B.A., C.P.A.  
Associate Professor  
Business Administration  
B.S., M.B.A., West Virginia University; C.P.A., Virginia and West Virginia.

Diane P. Kendrick, B.S., M.Ed., M.F.A.  
Professor  
Art  
B.S., East Carolina University; M.Ed., M.F.A., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Barbara A. Kushubar, B.S., M.S.S.  
Associate Professor  
Physical Education, Wellness & Sport Science  
B.S., Averett University; M.S.S., United States Sports Academy.

John C. H. Laughlin, B.A., M.Div., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Religion  
B.A., Wake Forest University; M.Div., Ph.D., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary.

Steven R. Lemery, B.A., M.S.  
Associate Professor  
Mathematics and Computer Science  
B.A., Southern Illinois University; M.S., University of Arizona.

Anne Lewis, B.M., M.M., D.M.A.  
Associate Professor  
Music  
B.M., M.M., Baylor University; D.M.A., University of North Carolina

Robert C. Marsh, B.S., M.F.A.  
Professor  
Art  
B.S., Florence State University; M.F.A., University of Mississippi.

Charles A. Martell, B.S., M.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Aeronautics  
B.S., Washington State University; M.A., Rider University.

Laura Meder, B.S., M.Sc.  
Assistant Professor  
Biology  
B.S., Averett University; M.Sc., University of London.

Geneviève J. Moëne, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
Foreign Language  
B.A., M.A., Ph.D., University of Virginia.

Timothy D. Montgomery, A.A., B.A., M.C.M., Ed.D.  
Professor  
Music  
A.A., Bluefield College; B.A., University of Richmond; M.C.M., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary;  
Ed.D., University of North Carolina at Greensboro.

Alice M. Obenchain-Leeson, B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Business Administration  
B.B.A., Roanoke College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Susan E. Osborne, B.S., M.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Mathematics  
B.S., Averett College; M.A., Wake Forest University.

Walter L. Penn III, B.A., J.D.  
Assistant Professor  
Aeronautics  
B.A., Hampden-Sydney College; J.D., University of Virginia School of Law.

Pamela B. Riedel, B.S., M.Ed., Ed.S., Ed.D.  
Professor  
Education  
B.S., M.Ed., Averett College; Ed.S., Ed.D., The College of William and Mary.

Sue F. Rogers, A.A., B.A., M.S., Ed.D.  
Professor  
Education  
A.A., Stratford College; B.A., M.S., Madison College; Ed.D., The American University; Graduate Study,  
University of Virginia.

David I. Rosenberg, B.A., M.S., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Psychology  
B.A., University of Virginia; M.S., Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Wallace S. Saunders, B.A., B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Business Administration  
Assistant Professor  
B.A., Washington Bible College; B.B.A., Northwood University; M.B.A. Liberty University; D.B.A.,  
University of Sarasota.

Penny A. Sornberger, A.A., B.A., M.F.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Theatre

A.A., Carl Sandburg College; B.A., M.F.A., Western Illinois University.

Eugene Steadman, Jr., B.S., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Associate Professor  
Business Administration

B.S., M.B.A., University of South Carolina; D.B.A., Louisiana Technical University.

Phillip R. Sturm, B.S., M.B.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Business Administration

B.S., M.B.A., Murray State University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Michael Sypes, B.S., Ph.D.  
Chemistry  
Assistant Professor

B.S., State University of New York at Stony Brook; Ph.D., The Pennsylvania State University.

Chin-Chyuan Tai, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Economics

B.A., M.A., National Taiwan University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Cincinnati.

John S. Termini, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Business Administration

B.A., University of Tulsa; M.A., Fairleigh Dickinson University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

William S. Trakas, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
History

B.A., Furman University; M.A., Ph.D., University of Wisconsin at Madison; Graduate Study, University of Munich, New York University.

William L. Trimyer, A.A., B.A., M.A., M.Div., D.Min.  
Associate Professor  
Religion

A.A., Bluefield College; B.A., Georgetown College; M.A., Goddard College; M.Div., Southern Baptist Theological Seminary; D.Min., Union Theological Seminary.

Gary A. Tucker, B.S., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor Mathematics and Computer Science

B.S., Averett College; M.A., Ph.D., Duke University; Graduate Study, Nova Southeastern University.

Brian S. Turner, B.S., M.T.  
Instructor  
Business Administration

B.S., Averett College; M.T., Old Dominion University.

James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.  
Humanities/Access Services Librarian  
Assistant Professor

B.M., Western Connecticut State University; M.L.S., Southern Connecticut State University; M.A., Yale University.

Thomas M. Vick, B.S., J.D.  
Associate Professor  
Aeronautics

B.S., Bridgewater State College; J.D., Massachusetts School of Law.

Karl R. Wallhausser, B.A., M.A.  
Instructor  
English

B.A., Berea College; M.A., University of Kentucky.

Lawrence E. Wilburn, B.A., M.A., Ph.D., B.A.  
Professor, Associate Dean of Arts and Sciences, Registrar  
Foreign Languages

B.A., University of Richmond; M.A., Ph.D., University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill.; B.A., Averett University.

Lynn H. Wolf, B.S., M.S., Ed.D.  
Associate Professor  
Education

B.S., University of North Carolina at Greensboro; M.S., Radford University; Ed.D., Nova Southeastern University.

Jeffrey S. Woo, B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Business Administration

B.A., Mary Washington College; M.B.A., Averett College; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.

Douglas S. Woundy, B.A., M.S.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Business Administration

B.A., University of Connecticut; M.S.A., Western Connecticut State University; Ph.D., Virginia Commonwealth University.

Steven D. Wray, B.Ed., M.Ed., J.D., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Sociology/Criminal Justice

B.Ed., M.Ed., Ph.D., University of Florida; J.D., Washington and Lee University; Graduate Study, Harvard University; New York University, Post Graduate School of Medicine; University of Louisville, Southern Police Institute.

Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.  
Professor, Vice President for Administration and Finance  
Business Administration

B.S., Averett College; M.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; D.B.A., Nova Southeastern University.



Darcy Wudel, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Political Science  
B.A., M.A., University of Alberta; Ph. D., University of Toronto.

### **Faculty Emeriti**

Alfred A. Bolton, B.S., M.A., D.B.A.  
Professor, Business Administration 1990-2004

Pauline Coll, A.B., M.A., L.H.D.  
Associate Professor, French 1946-1978

M. Elizabeth Compton, B.S., M.Ed., Ph.D.  
Professor, Education 1968-1999

Juanita G. Grant, B.S., B.S. in L.S., M.L.A.  
Professor, Director of Library 1967-1995

Richard M. Inlow, B.S., M.A., D.Arts  
Associate Professor, Mathematics 1967-1995

Mary Evelyn Jefferson, B.A., M.A., M.S.L.S.  
Associate Professor, Reference Librarian 1976-1987

Margaret Lanham, A.B., A.M., Ph.D.  
Professor, English 1943-1978

Charles Postelle, B.A., M.A.T., D.F.A.  
Associate Professor, History and Political Science 1966-1983

Charlotte Read, B.S., M.S.  
Associate Professor, Business Administration 1955-1990

Norma Roady, B.S., M.Ed.  
Associate Professor, Physical Education 1962-1991

### **President's Office**

Richard A. Pfau, A.B., M.A., Ph.D.  
President  
Karen W. Ward  
Administrative Assistant to the President

### **Academics**

Jeffrey A. Fager, B.A., M.Th., Ph.D.  
Dean of Arts and Sciences  
Lawrence E. Wilburn, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Dean and Registrar  
Larry Compton, B.A., M. S.  
Director, Center for Academic Excellence

Elaine L. Day, B.A., M.S.L.S.  
Director of Library; Associate Professor

June Ford, B.S.  
Faculty Credentials Specialist

Clara G. Fountain, B.A., M.S.L.S.  
Archivist, Associate Professor

Marquita Graves, A.A.S.  
Graduation Coordinator and Traditional Students Support Services

Ruth B. Haffner, B.A.  
Library Acquisitions Coordinator, Instructor

Kevin M. Harden, A.A., B.A., M.L.S.  
Social Sciences/Electronic Resources Librarian; Associate Professor

Haynes, Wanda  
Secretary to the Faculty

Stephen M. Hecox, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Director of the Writing Center

Linda Lemery, B.S., M.B.A.  
Library Circulation Coordinator

Karen Nelson  
Secretary to the Department of Education

Caroline A. Oakes, A.A.S.  
Records Specialist

Kathryn G. Oakes  
Equestrian Facilities Manager

Patsy W. Pickral, B.B.A.  
Library Cataloging Coordinator

Janet Roberson, B.A., B.A., M.B.A.  
Associate Registrar, VA Certifying Official and SEVIS Official

Gloria Robertson  
Secretary to the Faculty

Annette L. Soucy, A.A.S., B.A.  
Research Associate

TBA  
Director of Institutional Research

Deborah Touchstone, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Library Administrative Associate

James M. Verdini, B.A., M.L.S., M.A.  
Humanities/Access Services Librarian; Assistant Professor

Joan Vinson, B.S.  
Secretary to the Dean of Arts and Sciences

Brenda Wilcox, A.A.  
Aviation Office Manager

#### Lecturers - Medical Technology Affiliation

Augusta Medical Center, School of Clinical Laboratory Science

Bernadette Bekken, B.S., CLS (NCA), M.T., (A.S.C.P.), B.B.  
B.S., Aquinas College

Wayne P. Jessee, B.S., M.D.  
B.S., Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University;  
M.D., University of Virginia.

## **Administration and Finance**

Peggy C. Wright, B.S., M.S., D.B.A.  
Vice President for Administration & Finance

Pat Bowman  
Manager, Database Systems

Amelia Brooks, B.B.A.  
Webmaster/Software Support Specialist

Theodore Canto  
Dining Services Manager, Bon Appetit

Donald D'Alfonzo, B.S.  
Director of Information Technology

Faye Dix  
Payroll Benefits Coordinator

Steven Fuquay  
Desktop Manager

Al Green  
Computer Technician

Janice Griffith  
Secretary to the Director of Facilities Services, Aramark

Christopher W. Hanks, B.S.  
Coordinator of Internet Accounts

Nancy F. Harriett  
Administrative Assistant to the Vice President for Administration & Finance

Rod Henderson  
Mailroom Supervisor

Rose Holley  
Cashier/Coordinator of Supplies/Purchasing/Mailroom)

Sheila Jefferson  
Bookstore Manager, Barnes and Noble

Alonzo Jones  
Housekeeping Manager, Aramark

Harry Joyner  
Cable/Phone Technician

Tim Motley  
Security Manager, Aramark

Susan C. Newcomb, A.S.  
Director of Student Accounts

Justin Osborne, B.S.  
Computer Technician

Elizabeth Richardson, A.S.  
General Ledger Accountant

Lori Thurman, A.S., B.S., M.B.A.  
Comptroller

Linda Whitney  
Coordinator of Accounts Payable

Earl Worsham  
Director of Facilities Services, Aramark

## **Admissions**

Kathleen L. Tune, B.A., M.S.  
Dean of Admissions

Angela Bowers  
Office Manager/Coordinator of Application Processing

Teresa Hester, A.A.S.  
Campus Visit Coordinator

Brynn Hughes, B.S.  
Admissions Counselor

Dara Logan, B.S.  
Assistant Director of Admissions

Stephanie T. Mullins, B.A.  
Associate Director of Admissions

Joel Nester, B.A.  
Assistant Director of Admissions

Maximillian Roach, B.S.  
Admissions Counselor

Janet Schwalenberg, A.A.S., B.A.  
Data Entry Specialist

Janice L. Stone, B.A.  
Admissions Counselor

## **Athletics**

Charles Harris, B.S.  
Athletic Director

Jimmy Allen, B.S.  
Men's Basketball Coach

Kathy A. Bocoock, B.S.  
Women's Basketball Coach  
Softball Coach

Mavis Brantley-Lloyd  
Secretary to the Athletic Director

Mark Bryant  
Men's and Women's Cross Country Coach

Mike Dunlevy, B.S.  
Football Coach

Tim Dunlevy  
Director of Football Operations

Sam Ferguson, B.S.  
Sports Information Director

Joni Foster  
Cheerleading Coach

Amanda Shanks Frazier, B.S.  
Women's Soccer Coach

C. Edward Fulton, B.S.  
Director of Facilities, North Campus; Baseball Coach

James A. Gourlay, B.A.  
Men's Soccer Coach  
Golf Coach

Jerry McCombs, B.S., M.B.A.  
Assistant Football Coach

Melissa McCombs, B.S., M. Ed.  
Head Athletic Trainer  
V. Daniel Miller, B.S., M.B.A.  
Women's Volleyball Coach  
Women's Tennis Coach  
J. D. Shaw, B.S., M.S.  
Head Assistant Football Coach  
Bobby Shields, B.A., M.S.  
Men's Tennis Coach  
To Be Announced  
Lacrosse Coach

## **Financial Aid**

Carl Bradsher, A.A., B.S.  
Dean of Financial Assistance  
Faye S. Brandon, A.A.S., B.B.A.  
Financial Aid Counselor  
Nancy Clark  
Financial Aid Counselor  
Christine Davis  
Assistant Director of Financial Aid/Student Loan Officer  
Randall Thornton, B.A.  
Financial Aid Assistant

## **Graduate and Professional Studies**

### **ADMINISTRATION**

Fred Bolton, B.A., M.P.A., Ph.D.  
Acting Dean of GPS  
Patti Alderson  
Attendance Tracking Specialist  
Kendall Carter, B.A., M.B.A.  
Associate Dean for Operations  
Layne Charles  
Director of GPS Graduate Education  
Jackie Collie  
Secretary for IDEAL Program  
To Be Announced  
Evaluations Specialist  
Gerry Daly, B.S.  
Facilities Coordinator  
June Ford, B.S.  
Faculty Credentials Specialist GPS  
Kimberly J. Prosser  
Assistant to the Dean of GPS  
Susan Rowland, A.A.S., B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Assistant Registrar for GPS, Director, IDEAL Program  
Sheila Smithers, A.A.S.  
Regional Support Services  
Rosalind Warfield Brown, B.A., M.A.  
Director of On-Line Writing Lab (OWL)

### **GPS Accounting**

Betty Ann Gammon, A.A.S.  
Accounting Coordinator  
Sandy Isom, B.S., M.B.A.  
Accounting Manager  
Robin Martin, A.A.S.  
Accounting Coordinator  
Rhonda Rigney, B.S., M.B.A.  
Accounting Supervisor  
Rena Shanks, A.A.S., B.S.  
Accounting Coordinator

### **GPS Financial Aid**

Marty Jackson, B.B.A.  
Financial Aid Director  
Nichole Lathrop  
Services Assistant  
Diane Lee  
Services Assistant

### **CENTRAL VIRGINIA REGION**

Nancy P. Atkins, B.A., M.S.  
Director of Academic Services  
Erma Neveu, B.B.A.  
Student Advisor  
Robert L. (Bob) Sims, B.S., M.B.A.  
Director of Faculty Services  
Pam Taylor, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Faculty Coordinator  
Michael Jernigan, B.S., M.I.S., Ph.D.  
Assistant Professor  
Alice M. Obenchain-Leeson, B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Phillip R. Sturm, B.S., M.B.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Eugene Steadman, Jr., B.S., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Associate Professor  
Christy Anderson, B.B.A.  
Enrollment Representative  
Valerie Anderson, B.A.  
Enrollment Representative  
Ron Cannon  
Director of Corporate Relations  
Jamie Downing B.A.  
Enrollment Representative  
Channing Frye, B.A.  
Enrollment Coordinator  
Nancy Jonson  
Enrollment Representative

Denise Kampfmüller B.A.  
Director of Corporate Relations  
Linda Roberts B.A., M.B.A.  
Regional Director of Enrollment  
Kara Rowan  
Enrollment Representative  
Elizabeth Wingard, B.S.  
Enrollment Coordinator  
Mark Young  
Enrollment Representative

#### **SOUTHERN VIRGINIA AREA (SOVA)**

Debbie M. Hyler  
Admissions Coordinator  
Tiffany Mitchell, B.S.  
Academic Advisor  
Carter Neal, A.A.S., B.B.A.  
Faculty Coordinator  
Marietta Sanford, B.B.A., M.B.A.  
Director of Academic Services  
Wallace S. Saunders, B.A., B.B.A., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Assistant Professor  
Douglas S. Woundy, B.B., M.S.A., Ph.D.  
Professor  
Lee Ann Mahan, B.B.A.  
Enrollment Counselor  
Katherine Pappas-Smith, B.A.  
Regional Director of Enrollment

#### **TIDEWATER REGION**

Beth Hall  
Faculty Coordinator  
Lisa Paternite, B.A., M.S.  
Director of Academic Services  
Makena Stewart, B.A., M.S.Ed.  
Academic Advisor  
Lyle Cady, Jr., B.A., M.S., M.B.A., D.B.A.  
Assistant Professor  
John S. Termini, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Associate Professor  
Robin Bartlett  
Marketing Coordinator, IPD  
Michelle Lawrence  
Enrollment Counselor  
Valerie Murphy  
Regional Director of Marketing and Enrollment, IPD

## **Institutional Advancement**

Page Stooks, B.S.  
Vice President for Institutional Advancement

Kenneth G. Bond  
Art Director

Marion Breen, B.S., M.S.  
Administrative Assistant

Emily Cropp, B.A.  
Public Relations Assistant

Diane Gosney, A.A.S., B.B.A.  
Coordinator of Development Services

Donna R. Gourley, A.A.S.  
Executive Assistant to the Vice President

Susan L. Huckstep, B.A., M.A.  
Director of Public Relations

Sherry R. McDowell, A.A.S.  
Administrative Assistant to the Director of Alumni and Parent Relations

Garry L. Pritchett, B.S.  
Director of Alumni and Parent Relations

## **Student Development**

Dr. Mark Govoni, B.A., M.A., Ph.D.  
Dean of Students

Robert Armstrong, B.A., M.A.  
Director of Residence Life

Sandy Bash  
Secretary, Residence Life

Katlin Hecox, B.S., M.A.  
Director of Career Services

Joan Kahwajy-Anderson, B.S., M.Ed., L.P.C.  
Director of Counseling Services

Kelly Luther, B.S., M.S.  
Assistant Director of Residence Life

Cynthia Myers White  
Assistant to the Dean of Students

Joey Wilkerson, B.S., M.S.  
Director of Student Activities



**Averett University Alumni Association**

- Mary C. Franks '66..... Danville, VA  
Chairperson
- Charles W. Wickham '85 ..... Danville, VA  
Vice-Chairperson
- Elizabeth "Nonie" O. Swaim '55..... Pittsburgh, PA  
Secretary
- Pamela C. Ash '76..... Richmond, VA
- Joseph B. Baker '81 ..... Richmond, VA
- Vickie S. Black '03, '05 ..... Lexington, VA
- Jeannette A. Brown '49 ..... Chatham, VA
- Daniel Burns '90..... Hampton, VA
- Pattie Cairns '74 ..... Danville, VA
- Timothy S. Carter '94..... Miami, FL
- Daniel E. Carlton '90..... Earlysville, VA
- Emily S. Carlton '90..... Earlysville, VA
- Audrey M. Clark '03 ..... Newport News, VA
- Paula K. Darling '96..... Great Falls, VA
- Mary Jo Davis '55 ..... Danville, VA
- Carol U. Digesare '68 & '71..... Jacksonville, FL
- Jane F. Dungan '81 ..... Greer, SC
- Gonzalee M. Ford '58..... Boynton Beach, FL
- Carrie W. Gay '98 & '01 ..... Richmond, VA
- Brian K. Jackson '03 ..... Virginia Beach, VA
- Wanda Bostick Jeffress '81, '92..... South Boston, VA
- Pekka A. Kaartinen '82 ..... Espoo, Finland
- Stephanie Kent '87 ..... Floyd, VA
- John D. LaPrade '84 ..... Charlottesville, VA
- Jeanne E. LaRocco '98 ..... MacUnjie, PA

Julie D. Lockridge '55 ..... Chapel Hill, NC  
 Eric C. Miller '96 ..... Centreville, VA  
 Reid Mueller '00 ..... Fairfax, VA  
 James Michael Nealer '98 ..... Williamsburg, VA  
 Susan E. Osborne '96 ..... Ringgold, VA  
 Ronald L. Pegram '98 ..... Lynchburg, VA  
 Nancy S. Perry '72 ..... Portsmouth, VA  
 B. Teresa Petty '93 & '96 ..... Danville, VA  
 Gayle L. Plott '65 ..... Danville, VA  
 S. Florence Richman '99 ..... Potomac, MD  
 Donna L. Simpson '99 & '02 ..... Virginia Beach, VA  
 Joseph O. Sutliff '85 ..... Vinton, VA  
 Grace W. Taylor '54 ..... Clarksville, VA  
 Pamela L. Taylor '96 & '99 ..... Aylett, VA  
 Judy E. Thomas '98 & '01 ..... Petersburg, VA  
 Barrett L. Trimble '00 ..... Centreville, VA  
 Henry W. Trimble '00 ..... Centreville, VA  
 Alfred O. Upton '79 ..... Powhatan, VA  
 Steven Valladares '89 ..... Clemmons, NC  
 Addie D. Wilkerson '46 ..... Eden, NC  
 Meredith L. Wright '92 ..... Winston-Salem, NC

---



---

## UNDERGRADUATE COLLEGE CALENDAR

---



---

### ACADEMIC CALENDAR

	2006-2007	Tentative 2007-2008
FALL		
Transfer Student Orientation	August 17	August 23
Freshman Orientation	August 18-20	August 24-26
Faculty Workshop	August 18	August 24
Registration	August 21, 22	August 27, 28
Classes Begin	August 23	August 29
Opening Convocation and Senior Pinning	August 24	August 30
Fall Convocation	September 12	September 18
Homecoming	September 29, 30	October 12, 13
Fall Break	October 11, 12, 13	October 17, 18, 19
Classes Resume	October 16	October 22
Last Day to Apply for Graduation	November 10	November 16
Thanksgiving Break	November 22, 23, 24	November 21, 22, 23
Classes Resume	November 27	November 26
*Reading Day	November 30	December 6
Exams	December 1, 4, 5, 6	December 7, 10, 11, 12
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	December 7	December 13
Commencement	December 9	December 15
Fall Grades Due	December 12	December 18
<b>SPRING</b>		
New Student Registration	January 8	January 14
Registration	January 8, 9	January 14, 15
Classes Begin	January 10	January 16
Founders Day	January 18	January 24
*Interdisciplinary Day	February 9	February 15
Spring Break	March 5 – 9	March 10 - 14
Classes Resume	March 12	March 17
*Good Friday	April 6	March 21
Last Day to Apply for Graduation	March 30	April 4
*Reading Day	April 19	April 24
Exams	April 20, 23, 24, 25	April 25, 28, 29, 30
Senior Grades Due 9:00 a.m.	April 26	May 1
Commencement	April 28	May 3
Spring Grades Due	May 1	May 6
*No Classes		

#### SUMMER SESSIONS –

<b>First Term:</b>	(2007) April 30 – May 11	(2008) May 5 – May 16
<b>Second Term:</b>	(2007) *May 14 – June 8	(2008) *May 19 – June 13
<b>Third Term:</b>	(2007)**June 11 – July 6	(2008)**June 16 – July 11
	*No classes May 28	*No classes May 26
	**No classes July 4	**No classes July 4

---

---

## INDEX

---

---

Academic Honors, 36  
Academic Program, 18  
    Degrees Offered, 18  
    Graduation Requirements, 32  
Academic Renewal, 40  
Acceptance, 10  
Accounting, 51  
Accreditation, 5  
Adding/Dropping a Course, 44  
Admission, 9  
    Accelerated, 11  
    Readmission, 14  
Adult Degree Program (see IDEAL),  
Advanced Placement, 10  
Advising, 44  
Aeronautics, 55  
    Aerospace Management/Criminal Justice, 60  
    Aviation Business, 57  
    Aviation Maintenance Operations, 59  
    Aviation Technical Systems, 59  
    Flight Operations, 57  
Alumni Association, 229, 265  
Art, 65  
Associates, Board of, 249  
Athletics, 227  
Attendance and Absences, 34  
  
Basic Degree Requirements, 18  
Biology, 71  
Biology/Chemistry, 92  
Bookstore, 231  
Business Administration, 79  
    Accounting, 80  
    Finance, 81  
    Global Marketing Management, 83  
    Management Science, 82  
  
Calendar, 267  
Campus, 6  
Campus Activities Board, 224  
Campus Visits, 16  
Career Services, 225  
Center for Academic Excellence, 225  
Chemistry, 90  
Chemistry/Biology, 92  
Class Attendance, 34  
Classification of Students, 43  
CLEP, 45  
Clubs, Student, 228  
Commuter Students, 15

- Computer and Information Science, 96
  - Computer Information Systems, 97
  - Computer Science, 96
- Counseling Center, 225
- Course Load, 45
- Course Repeats, 41
- Credit by Examination, 46
- Criminal Justice, 102

- Danville, VA, 5
- Dean's List, 37
- Declaration of Major, 30
- Degrees, 18
- Degree Programs, 49
- Degree Requirements, 49
- Degree-Seeking Status, 13
- Diploma Application, 32
- Directed Teaching, 121
- Direct Transfer Agreement, 13
- Disability Services, 226
- Dropping/Adding a Course, 44
- Dual Enrollment, 11

- Economics, 108
- Education, 109
  - Elementary (Liberal Studies), 110
  - Secondary, 115
- English, 122
- English/History (Pre-Law), 128
- English/Theatre, 219
- Environmental Sciences, 130
- Equestrian Studies, 133
- Evaluation of Academic Work, 35

- Faculty, 250
- Fees, (See Financial Information), 232
- Financial Assistance, 236
- Financial Information, 232
- Financial Policy, 234
- Food Services, 226
- Forgiveness, Academic, 41
- French, 141

- General Education Requirements, 19, 22
- General Regulations, 43
- Grade Appeal, 35
- Grading System, 35
- Graduate and Professional Studies, 47
- Graduate Education Programs, 117
- Graduation Application, 32
- Graduation Requirements, 32
- Greek, 143

- Health, 143
- Health Services, 226

Hebrew, 143  
History, 144  
History and Politics, 149  
History of Averett University, 5  
Honor Code, 34  
Honors Program, 31, 150  
Honor Societies, 38  
Honors, Academic 36, 37  
Human Computer Interaction Program, 153

I-20 Form, 12, 230  
IDEAL, 47  
Independent Study, 50  
Information Directory, 273-274  
Information Technology (see computer science),  
Intercollegiate Athletics, 227  
Interdisciplinary Studies 155  
International Baccalaureate Diploma, 13  
International Students, 11  
International Study Opportunities, 31

Journalism, 156

Language Requirement, 23  
Leadership Studies, 160  
Leave of Absence, 42  
Liberal Studies, 30  
    With Teaching License, 31, 110  
Library, 7  
Loans and Scholarships, 236, 247  
Location of the University, 5

Major, Formal Declaration, 30  
Majors and Minors, 28  
Mathematics, 162  
Mathematical Decision Science, 165  
Medical Technology, 169  
Military Credit, 46  
Minor, Formal Declaration, 30  
Mission Statement, 3  
Motor Vehicles, 231  
Music, 171  
    Church Music, 172  
    Performance, 172  
Non-Collegiate Learning Experiences, 46  
Non-Traditional Study, 15

Organizations, Student, 228

Parental Access, 47  
Parking, 231  
Pass/Fail Option, 45  
Peer Tutoring, 225  
Personnel Directory, 257  
Philosophy, 178

Physical Education, Wellness and Sport Science, 179  
    Athletic Training Program, 184  
    Health, Physical Education and Drivers Education with Teaching License, 180  
    Physical Education, 179  
    Sports Management, 181  
    Wellness/Sports Medicine, 183  
Physical Science, 193  
Placement Tests, 10, 12  
Political Science, 194  
Pre-Law (see English/History),  
Pre-Professional Studies, 31  
President's List, 37  
Probation, Academic, 39  
Proficiency Requirements, 24  
Psychology,  
Publications, Student, 228

Quality Points, 35

Radiologic Technology, 75  
Readmission, 14, 42  
Refunds, 234  
Registration for Classes, 44  
Religion, 205  
Religious Life, 224  
Repeating Courses, 41  
Residence Halls, 229  
Residence Requirements, 230  
Resident Students, 15

Scholarship Assistance, 236  
Scholarships: Honors Students, 37  
Second Baccalaureate Degree, 33  
Secondary Education, 9  
Senior Citizen Discount, 232  
Senior College Credits, 32  
Social and Cultural Life, 224  
Sociology, 210  
Sociology/Criminal Justice, (See Criminal Justice)  
Spanish, 214  
Special Education, 115  
Special Students, 14  
Special Studies, 50  
Speech (See Theatre), 220  
Student Government Association, 228  
Student Life, 224  
Student Loans, 236, 247  
Student Organizations, 228  
Student Services, 225  
Summer Sessions, 45  
Supplemental Fees, 233  
Suspension, Academic, 39

Teacher Licensure, (See Education)  
Theatre, 216  
Transcripts, 46  
Transfer Applications, 12  
Transfer Credits, 13, 43  
Trustees, Board of, 248  
Tuition and Fees (See Financial Information), 232  
Tutorials, 50  
Tutoring Services 226

Visitors, 16

Warning, Academic, 39  
Wellness/Fitness Center, 227  
Withdrawal from a Course, 44  
Withdrawal from University, 41, 235  
Writing Center, 225  
Writing Proficiency Exam, 12



---

---

# INFORMATION DIRECTORY

---

---

**Admissions**

Campus Visitations  
Interviews with Prospective Students

**Dean of Admissions****Academic Records**

Grades  
Graduation Requirements  
Registration  
Transcripts  
Transfer Credits  
Veteran Affairs

**Registrar****Academic Advising**

Academic Discipline  
Student Academic Concerns  
Freshman Interdisciplinary Program  
Faculty  
Class Schedules

**Dean of Arts and Sciences****Alumni and Parent Relations****Director of Alumni and Parent Relations****Athletics**

Men's and Women's Intercollegiate Teams

**Athletic Director****Contributions**

Annual Giving  
Gifts

**Vice President for Institutional Advancement****Faculty Development**

Employment  
Evaluation  
Promotion  
Tenure  
Curriculum Development and Assessment

**Dean of Arts and Sciences****Financial Affairs**

Tuition and Fees  
Insurance  
Facilities  
Security  
Mailroom  
Bookstore

**Vice President for Administration and Finance****Financial Aid**

Loans  
Scholarships

**Dean of Financial Assistance****Graduate and Professional Studies****Dean of Graduate and Professional Studies**

**Information Technology**

Computer Center  
Internet Services

**Director of Information Technology**

**Library**

**Director of Library**

**Student Life**

Career Services  
Counseling Services  
Residence Life  
Student Activities

**Dean of Student Development**